

**Chapter 0 About This Manual** 

# OKIDATA® Service Manual

## OKIFAX 1050 // 2350 // 2450 FACSIMILE PRODUCTS

Adobe Acrobat printable reference copy of the OKIDATA Service Training Manual. 09/17/97

Note: This Adobe Acrobat version of the Okidata Service Training Manual was built with the pictures rendered at 300 dpi, which is ideal for printing, but does not view on most displays well.

| Table of Contents | Page |
|-------------------|------|
|-------------------|------|

| Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450   |          |  |
|--|----------|--|
| 0 About This Manual  |          |  |
| Front Cover  | 1        |  |
| Federal Communications Commission Requirements for End   | 2        |  |
| Users  |          |  |
| FCC Telephone Consumer Protection Act  | 3        |  |
| Canadian Department of Communications Requirements for   | 4        |  |
| End Users  | _        |  |
| Federal Communications Commission Radio Frequency  | 5        |  |
| Statement  | 0        |  |
| Canadian Department of Communications Radio Interference   | 6        |  |
| Statement  1 General Information   |          |  |
| 1.1 General Performance  | 7        |  |
| 1.2 General User's Function  | 8        |  |
| 1.3 General Maintenance Functions  | 9        |  |
| 1.4 General Appearance   | 10       |  |
| Figure 1.4.2 OKIFAX 1050 Control Panel   | 11       |  |
| Figure 1.4.3 OKIFAX 2350 Control Panel   | 12       |  |
| Figure 1.4.4 OKIFAX 2450 Control Panel   | 13       |  |
| 1.5 Basic Performance Specifications   | 14       |  |
| 1.6 Reports and Lists  | 15       |  |
| Reports and Lists - Continued  | 16       |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 1050 (1/2): (Example)   | 17       |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 1050 (2/2): (Example)   | 18       |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2350 (1/4): (Example)   | 19       |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2350 (2/4): (Example)   | 20       |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2350 (3/4): (Example)   | 21       |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2350 (4/4): (Example)   | 22       |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (1/6): (Example)   | 23       |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (2/6): (Example)   | 24<br>25 |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (3/6): (Example)Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (4/6): (Example) | 25<br>26 |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (4/6): (Example)   | 20<br>27 |  |
| Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (5/6): (Example)   | 28       |  |
| Reports and Lists - Continued  | 29       |  |
| 2 Setup Information  | 20       |  |
| 2A-Setup Information   | 30       |  |
| 2.2 Site Selection   | 31       |  |
| 2.3 Unpacking  | 32       |  |
| 2.4 Check of Contents  | 33       |  |
| 2.5 Installation of Attachments  | 34       |  |
| Toner cartridge  | 35       |  |

| Table of Contents                                    | Page       |
|--|------------|
| Recording paper                                      | 36         |
| Document stacker                                     | 37         |
| 2.6 AC Cord Connection                               | 38         |
| 2.7 Telephone and Line Connections                   | 39         |
| 2.8 Packing for Shipment                             | 40         |
| 2B. Programming and Initial Settings                 | 41         |
| 2.9.2 Technical Functions                            | 42         |
| 2.9.2.02 TEL/FAX automatic switching                 | 43         |
| 2.9.2.03 TAD mode                                    | 44         |
| TEL/FAX mode flow chart                              | 45         |
| TAD mode flow chart                                  | 46         |
| TAD mode flow chart                                  | 47         |
| 2.9.3 Technical Functions Example                    | 48         |
| 2.9.3.02 Technical functions                         | 49         |
| Table 2.9.2 (1/3) Technical Functions                | 50         |
| Table 2.9.2 (2/3) Technical Functions                | 51         |
| Table 2.9.2 (3/3) Technical Functions                | 52         |
| 2.9.4 Users Functions                                | 53         |
| Table 2.9.3 (1/6) Feature Specifications             | 54         |
| Table 2.9.3 (2/6) Feature Specifications             | 55         |
| Table 2.9.3 (3/6) Feature Specifications             | 56         |
| Table 2.9.3 (4/6) Feature Specifications             | 57         |
| Table 2.9.3 (5/6) Feature Specifications             | 58         |
| Table 2.9.3 (6/6) Feature Specifications             | 59         |
| Users Initial Settings                               | 60         |
| Table 2.9.4 (1/3) One-touch key Program Settings     | 61         |
| Table 2.9.4 (2/3) One-touch key Program Settings     | 62         |
| Table 2.9.4 (3/3) One-touch key Program Settings     | 63         |
| Table 2.9.4 User Function Program Settings           | 64         |
| 2.9.5 User's Functions Example                       | 65         |
| Table 2.9.5 User's Functions                         | 66         |
| 2.9.5.02 Ring response time                          | 67         |
| 2.9.5.03 Dial parameters (In case the service bit is | "OFF".) 68 |
| 2.9.6 Clock Adjustment                               | 69         |
| 2.9.7 Dual Access Operation (for OKIFAX 2350/2450    | 70         |
| 2.9.8 System Data Programming                        | 71         |
| 2.9.9 One-Touch Key Programming                      | 72         |
| 2.9.10 Two-digit Auto Dial Programming               | 73         |
| 2.9.11 Group setting                                 | 74         |
| 2.9.12 Dial Parameters Settings                      | 75         |
| 2.9.12.02 Procedure                                  | 76         |
| Table 2.9.6 Dial Parameters Settings                 | 77         |
| 2.9.13 Programming Mail Box Password                 | 78         |
| 2.9.14 Memory Operations                             | 79         |

| Table of Contents   | Page |
|---|------|
| 2.9.14.02 CONF. RX MSG. PRINT   | 80   |
| 2.9.15 Off-line Tests   | 81   |
| 2.9.16 On-line Tests  | 82   |
| 2.9.16.02 Reception   | 83   |
| Fig. 2.9.5 Typical Transmission Flow                                    | 84   |
| Fig. 2.9.6 Typical Reception Flow                                       | 85   |
| 2C. Installation of Optional Units                                      | 86   |
| 2.10.02 Procedure   | 87   |
| Installation of the memory board  | 88   |
| Installation of PCIU (PC interface) board                               | 89   |
| 3 Board Description/Printer Operation                                   |      |
| Section 1: Board Description - 3.1 Unit Configuration and Block Diagram | 90   |
| 3.1.02 The unit configuration of the OKIFAX 2350/2450 is as follows:    | 91   |
| 3.2 Overall Dimension and Mechanical Structure of OKIFAX 1050           | 92   |
| 3.3 Overall Dimension and Mechanical Structure of OKIFAX 2350/2450      | 93   |
| 3.4 Boards and Units  | 94   |
| 3.5 Function of Each Board  | 95   |
| 3.5.02 Operation panel unit: YOPE (OKIFAX 1050)/YOPE-2                  | 96   |
| (OKIFAX 2350/2450) board  |      |
| 3.5.03 NCUU board   | 97   |
| 3.5.04 Power supply unit: FXVE (120V)/FXVH (230V) board                 | 98   |
| 3.5.05 MEMO (memory) board (Option)                                     | 99   |
| 3.5.06 P050 board (Optional PC Interface)                               | 100  |
| 3.5.07 HOOK board (Optional handset)                                    | 101  |
| 3.5.08 TELU board (Option): For US and Canada                           | 102  |
| 3.5.09 TQSB board (installed within second paper cassette option)       | 103  |
| OKIFAX 1050 Block Diagram   | 104  |
| Figure 3.5.2 OKIFAX 2350/2450 Block Diagram                             | 105  |
| 3.6 Explanation of Signal Flow for OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450                | 106  |
| 3.7 Signal Flow by Mode of operation (OKIFAX 1050)                      | 107  |
| Okifax 1050 300 bps Send Signal   | 108  |
| Okifax 1050 300 bps Receive Signal                                      | 109  |
| Okifax 1050 G3 Send Picture Signal                                      | 110  |
| Okifax 1050 G3 Receive Picture Signal                                   | 111  |
| Okifax 1050 Report Print Signal   | 112  |
| 3.8 Signal Flow by Mode of Operation (OKIFAX 2350/2450)                 | 113  |
| Okifax 2350/2450 300 bps Send   | 114  |
| Okifax 2350/2450 300 bps Receive Signal                                 | 115  |
| Okifax 2350/2450 G3 Send Picture Signal                                 | 116  |

| Table of Contents  | Page |
|--|------|
| Okifax 2350/2450 G3 Receive Picture Signal                   | 117  |
| Okifax 2350/2450 Report Print Signal                         | 118  |
| 3.9 Power Supply Unit  | 119  |
| General functional description                               | 120  |
| 3.9.02 Power Supply Unit (FXVE/FXVH)                         | 121  |
| 3.9.03 FXVE (for 120 V)/FXVH (for 230 V) Circuit Diagram     | 122  |
| (2/2)  |      |
| 3.10 NCU Board   | 123  |
| 3.11 TELU Circuit Diagram (option)                           | 124  |
| Block Diagram of TEL-U (option)                              | 125  |
| Relationship between NCUU and TEL-U                          | 126  |
| 3.12 MEMO (memory) Circuit Diagram (option)                  | 127  |
| 3.13 P050 (PC interface unit) Circuit Diagram (option)       | 128  |
| 3.14 TQSB (Second tray) Circuit Diagram: option              | 129  |
| Section 2: Print Operation - 3.15 Mechanical Components      | 130  |
| Layout of Print Station Components                           | 131  |
| 3.16 Process Operations                                      | 132  |
| 3.16.02 Charging   | 133  |
| 3.16.03 Exposure   | 134  |
| 3.16.4 Developing  | 135  |
| 3.16.05 Transfer   | 136  |
| 3.16.06 Fusing   | 137  |
| 3.16.07 Cleaning   | 138  |
| 3.16.08 Cleaning of rollers                                  | 139  |
| 3.17 Actual Electo-photographic Process                      | 140  |
| 3.18 Errors List   | 141  |
| 3.19 Major Trouble Errors                                    | 142  |
| 3.20 Cleaning  | 143  |
| 3.21 Sensors and Switches                                    | 144  |
| 3.21.02. Sensors and switch control                          | 145  |
| 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly                      |      |
| 4.1 General  | 146  |
| 4.1.2 Tools  | 147  |
| 4.2 How to Disassemble and Reassemble                        | 148  |
| 4.2.1 LED Print Head   | 149  |
| 4.2.2 Image Drum, Rear Cover, NCU Cover, Main Cover,         | 150  |
| Separation Plate, NCU Board, Modem Board                     |      |
| 4.2.3 Control Panel Assembly, Paper Guide (U) Assembly.      | 151  |
| 4.2.4 Sub-roller, ADF Roller Assembly, Pinch Roller, Contact | 152  |
| Image Sensor, Document Detectors (PC1 and PC2).              |      |
| 4.2.5 Registration Stepper Motor, Main Stepper Motor,        | 153  |
| release Guide Assembly, Eject Roller Assembly, Manual Guide  |      |
| Assembly (only for OKIFAX 2350/2450), Stack Cover, Fusing    |      |
| Unit   |      |

| Table of Contents | Page |
|-------------------|------|

| 4.2.6 Lower Base, Motor Assembly, Back-up Roller, Transfer Roller, Reset Levers                                 | 154        |
|---|------------|
| 4.2.7 Registration Roller, Hopping Roller, Sensor Plates  | 155        |
| 4.2.8 MCNT Board, Power Supply Unit, Contact Assembly, Transformer  | 156        |
|   |            |
| 5 Adjustments 5 1 Setting of LED Brint Hoad Drive Time  | 157        |
| 5.1 Setting of LED Print Head Drive Time  |            |
| <ul><li>5.2 Power Voltage (Confirmation)</li><li>5.3 Contact Image Sensor Output Check (Confirmation)</li></ul> | 158<br>159 |
| 6 Cleaning and Maintenance  | 100        |
| 6.1 Replacement of Consumable Parts   | 160        |
| 6.2 Preventative Maintenance  | 161        |
| 6.3 Printer Counter Display/Clear   | 162        |
| 6.4 Printer Counter Display/Clear   | 163        |
| 6.5 Self-diagnosis Test   | 164        |
| 6.6 Sensor Calibration Test   | 165        |
| 6.7 LED Test  | 166        |
| 6.8 Tone Send Test  | 167        |
| 6.9 High-speed Modern Send Test   | 168        |
| 6.10 High-speed Modem Receive Test  | 169        |
| 6.11 MF Send Test   | 170        |
| 6.12 Tone (TEL/FAX)   | 171        |
| 6.13 Printer Cleaning   | 172        |
| 6.14 Protocol Dump Data Printing  | 173        |
| 6.14.02 Procedure   | 174        |
| 6.14.03 Dump data description   | 175        |
| 6.14.04 Analysis from the data  | 176        |
| 6.14.05 FCF (Facsimile Control Field) conversion table  | 177        |
| 6.15 System Reset   | 178        |
| 6.16 Service Code   | 179        |
| 7 Troubleshooting and Repair  |            |
| General   | 180        |
| 7.1 Overall Troubleshooting Flow Chart  | 181        |
| 7.2 No LCD Operation  | 182        |
| 7.3 ALARM LED ON  | 183        |
| 7.4 Printing Test Failure   | 184        |
| 7.5 No Local Copy   | 185        |
| 7.6 Auto Dial Failure   | 186        |
| 7.7 Transmission Problem  | 187        |
| 7.8 Auto Reception Failure  | 188        |
| 7.9 Reception Problem   | 189        |
| 7.10 Scan Calibration Test Failure  | 190        |
| 7.11 LED Test   | 191        |
| 7.12 Tone Send Test   | 192        |

| Table of Contents   | Page |
|---|------|
| 7.13 High-speed Modem Test                                | 193  |
| 7.14 MF Send Test   | 194  |
| 7.15 Tone (TEL/FAX) Send Test                             | 195  |
| 7.16 No Acoustic Line Monitor                             | 196  |
| 7.17 Power Supply Unit                                    | 197  |
| 7.18 No Document Feeding                                  | 198  |
| 7.19 Multiple Document Feeding                            | 199  |
| 7.20 Document Skew  | 200  |
| 7.21 Document Jam   | 201  |
| 7.22 Printer Unit   | 202  |
| 7.22.2 Troubleshooting Flow Chart of Printer Unit         | 203  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 1:                             | 204  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 2:                             | 205  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 3:                             | 206  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 4:                             | 207  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 5:                             | 208  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 6:                             | 209  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 7:                             | 210  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 8:                             | 211  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 9:                             | 212  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 10:                            | 213  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 11:                            | 214  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 12:                            | 215  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 13:                            | 216  |
| Troubleshooting flow chart 14: Troubleshooting flow chart | 217  |
| 15:   |      |
| 8 Drawings and Parts List                                 |      |
| ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 1050                                    | 218  |
| ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 2350/2450                               | 219  |
| SECTION 1 CABINET ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 1050                  | 220  |
| SECTION 1 CABINET ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 2350/2450             | 221  |
| SECTION 2 CONTROL ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 1050                  | 222  |
| SECTION 2 CONTROL ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 2350                  | 223  |
| SECTION 2 CONTROL ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 2450                  | 224  |
| SECTION 3 PRINTER ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 2350/2450             | 225  |
| SECTION 3 PRINTER ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 1050                  | 226  |
| SECTION 4 BASE ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 1050                     | 227  |
| SECTION 4 BASE ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 2350/2450                | 228  |
| SECTION 5 SCAN UNIT - OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450               | 229  |
| SECTION 6 PAPER ASSEMBLY - OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450          | 230  |
| SECTION 7 CABLES - OKIFAX 1050                            | 231  |
| SECTION 7 CABLES - OKIFAX 2350/2450                       | 232  |
| Section 8: Packaging                                      | 233  |
| 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance           |      |

| Table of Contents               | Page |
|---------------------------------|------|
| PREFACE                         | 234  |
| 9.1 Outline                     | 235  |
| 9.2 Mechanism Description       | 236  |
| 9.3 PARTS REPLACEMENT           | 237  |
| 9.3.2 Parts Layout              | 238  |
| 9.3.3 Parts Replacement Methods | 239  |
| 9.3.3.1. Pulse Motor (Hopping)  | 240  |
| 9.3.3.2. TQSB-PCB               | 241  |
| 9.4 Troubleshooting             | 242  |
| 9.5 Connection Diagram          | 243  |
| 9.5.2 PCB Layout                | 244  |
| 9.6 Parts List                  | 245  |



**Chapter 0 About This Manual** 

#### **Federal Communications Commission Requirements for End Users**

This device has been granted a registration number by the Federal Communications Commission, under Part 68 rules and regulations for direct connection to the telephone lines. In order to comply with these FCC rules, the following instructions must be carefully read and applicable portions followed completely.

- 1. This equipment complies with Part 68 of FCC rules. On the bottom of the equipment is a label that contains, among other information, the FCC registration number and ringer equivalence number (REN) for this equipment. If requested, this information must be provided to the telephone company.
- 2. The following USOC jacks may be used with this equipment: RJ11C.
- 3. The REN is used to determine the quantity of devices which may be connected to the telephone line. Excessive RENs on the telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an emergency call. In most, but not all areas, the sum of the RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to the line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the tele-phone company to determine the maximum REN for your calling area.
- 4. If the equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance. But if advance notice isn't practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. Also, you will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC if you believe it is necessary.
- 5. The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations, or procedures that could affect the operation of the equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make the necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.
- 6. If trouble is experienced with this equipment, please contact the following for repair and/or warranty information:

OKIDATA 532 Fellowship Rd. Mount Laurel, NJ 08054-3405 Telephone: (609) 235-2600 or 1-(800)-OKIDATA

If the trouble is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you remove the equipment from the network until the problem is resolved.

- 7. This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. Please contact OKIDATA for service.
- 8. This equipment cannot be used on public coin service provided by the telephone company. Connection to Party Line Service is subject to state tariffs. Contact your state Public Utility Commission, Public Service Commission, or Corporate Commission for information.
- 9. This equipment is hearing-aid compatible.



**Chapter 0 About This Manual** 

#### **FCC Telephone Consumer Protection Act**

The Federal Communications Commission Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device to send any message via a telephone fax machine unless such message clearly contains, in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual.

To comply with this law, you must enter the following information in your fax unit:

• Date and time • Name and telephone number which identify the source of your fax transmission



**Chapter 0 About This Manual** 

#### **Canadian Department of Communications Requirements for End Users**

The Canadian Department of Communications label identifies certified equipment. This certification means that the equipment meets certain telecommunications network protective, operational and safety requirements. The Department does not guarantee the equipment will operate to the users satisfaction. Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telecommunications company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. In some cases, the company's inside wiring associated with a single line individual service may be extended by means of a certified connector assembly (telephone extension cord). The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent degradation of service in some situations. Repairs to certified equipment should be made by an authorized Canadian maintenance facility designated by the supplier.

Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions, may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment. Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone lines and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected together. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.

Users should not attempt to make such connections themselves, but should contact the appropriate electric inspection authority, or electrician, as appropriate. The Load Number assigned to each terminal device denotes the percentage of the total load to be connected to a telephone loop which is used by the device, to prevent overloading. The termination of a loop may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the total of the Load Numbers of all the devices does not exceed 100.

Letiquette du Ministere des Communications du Canada identifie le materiel homologue. Cette etiquette certifie que le materiel est conforme a certaines normes de protection, dexploitation et de securite des reseaux de telecommunications. Le Ministere nassure toutfois pas que le materiel fonctionnera a la satisfaction de lutilisateur.

Avant dinstaller ce materiel, lutilisateur doit sassurer qull est permis de le raccorder aux installations de lentreprise locale de telecommunication. Le materiel doit egalement etre installe en suivant une method acceptee de raccordement. Dans certains cas, les fils interieurs de lentreprise utilises pour un service individuel a ligne unique peuvent etre prolonges au moyen dun dispositif homologue de raccordement (cordon prologateur telephonique interne). Labonne ne doit pas oublier quil est possible que la conformite aux conditions enoncees ci-dessus nempechent pas la degradation du service dans certaines situations. Actuellement, les entreprises de telecommunication ne permettent pas que lon raccorde leur materiel a des jacks dabonne, sauf dans les cas precis prevus par les tarrifs particuliers de ces entreprises.

Les reparations de materiel homologue doivent etre effectuees par un centre dentretien canadien autorise designe par le fournisseur. La compagnie de telecommunications peut demander a lutilisateur de debrancher un appareil a la suite de reparations ou de modifications effectuses par lutilisateur ou a cause de mauvais fonctionnement.

Pour sa propre protection, lutilisateur doit sassurer que tous les fils de mise a la terre de la source denergie electrique, des lignes telephoniques et des canalisations deau metalliques, sil y en a, sont raccordes ensemble. Cette precaution est particulierement importante dans les regions rurales. Avertissement: Lutilisateur ne doit pas tenter de faire ces raccordements lui-meme; il doit avoir recoursa un service dinspection des installations electriques, ou a electricien, selon le cas.

Lindice de charge (IC) assigne a chaque dispositif terminal indique, pour eviter toute surcharge, le pourcentage de la charge totale qui peut etre raccordee a un circuit telephonique boucle utilise par ce dispositif. La terminaison du circuit boucle peut etre constituee de nimport quelle combinaison de dispositifs, pourvu que la somme des indices de charge de lensemble des dispositifs ne depasse pas 100.



**Chapter 0 About This Manual** 

#### **Federal Communications Commission Radio Frequency Statement**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interfer-ence in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communica-tions. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equip-ment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Okidata may void your authority to operate this device.



**Chapter 0 About This Manual** 

#### **Canadian Department of Communications Radio Interference Statement**

This apparatus complies with the Class A limits for radio interference as specified in the Canadian Department of Communications Radio Interference Regulations.

Cet appareil est conforme aux normes Class A dinterference radio tel que specifier par le Ministere Canadien des Communications dans les Reglements DInterference Radio.



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

#### 1.1 General Performance

#### 1.1.01 Style

Desktop

#### 1.1.02 Applicable lines

General switched telephone network (GSTN) Private branch exchange (PBX)

#### 1.1.03 Compatibility

ITU-T Group 3 facsimile transceiver

#### 1.1.04 Document width

Max. 8.5" (216 mm) (NA Letter) Min. 5.8" (148 mm) (ISO A5 size)

#### 1.1.05 Effective reading width

Max. 8.46" (215 mm)

#### 1.1.06 Scanning length

5" (128 mm) to 14" (356 mm)

(Length setting: Infinite is also available.)

#### 1.1.07 Automatic document feeder (ADF)

30 sheets (NA Letter/A4-size: 20-1b bond. OKIDATA recommended paper)

15 sheets (NA Letter/A4-size: 13 to 28-1b bond)

#### Note: NA is North America

#### 1.1.08 Recording paper or sheet

First cassette: NA Letter/NA Legal/A4-size plain paper cut 250 sheets capacity (20-1b bond\*)

Second cassette (Option): NA Letter/NA Legal/A4-size plain paper cut (OKIFAX 2350/2450) 500 sheets capacity (20-1b bond\*) Manual loading feeder: Transparency for overhead projector, applicable. (OKIFAX 2350/2450) Sheet size: NA Letter/NA Legal/A4-size \* OKIDATA recommended paper

#### 1.1.09 Printable width

NA Letter: 8.2" (208 mm) (8.0" (203.2 mm) for assured quality) NA Legal: 8.2" (208 mm) (8.0" (203.2 mm) for assured quality) ISO A4: 8.1" (206 mm) (7.77" (197.3 mm) for assured quality)

#### 1.1.10 Printable length

NA Letter: 10.76" (273.3 mm) (10.5" (266.7 mm) for assured quality) NA Legal: 13.76" (349.5 mm) (13.5" (342.9 mm) for assured quality) ISO A4: 11.46" (291 mm) (11.19" (284.3 mm) for assured quality)

#### 1.1.11 Copy stacker

Max. 100 sheets (20-lb bond)

#### \* Okidata recommended paper

#### 1.1.12 Scanning resolution

Horizontal: 8 pel/mm

Vertical: Transmission mode: 3.85 line/mm (STD) (200 x 100 LPI) 7.7 line/mm (FINE) (200 x 200 LPI) 15.4 line/mm (EX. FINE) (200 x 400 LPI) COPY mode: 7.7 line/mm (200 x 200 LPI)

#### 1.1.13 Scanning method

NA Letter (1728-bit) contact image sensor

#### 1.1.14 Recording resolution

Horizontal: 8 pel/mm

Vertical:

Variable: Automatically adjusted to the paper length. STD mode: 3.85 to 5.06 line/mm FINE, COPY mode: 7.7 to 10.13 line/mm Fixed: 3.85 line/mm (STD) 7.7 line/mm (FINE, COPY)

#### 1.1.15 Recording method

NA Letter size (1728-bit) LED print head

#### 1.1.16 Minimum scan line time for receiving

When receiving from OKIFAX: 0 ms

When receiving from non-OKIFAX: 10 ms at 3.85 line/mm 5 ms at 7.7 line/mm

#### 1.1.17 Print speed Max.

4 sheets per minute (OKIFAX 1050)

Max. 8 sheets per minute (OKIFAX 2350/2450)

#### 1.1.18 Pre-heating time

No pre-heating mode

#### 1.1.19 Coding scheme

Modified Huffman (MH)

Modified READ (MR)

Modified Modified READ (MMR)

#### 1.1.20 Modem

ITU-T Rec. V.29: 9600/7200 bps (OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450)

ITU-T Rec. V.27 ter: 4800/2400 bps (OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450)

ITU-T Rec. V.21 channel 2: 300 bps (OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450)

ITU-T Rec. V.17: 14400/12000 bps (OKIFAX 2350/2450; option)

ITU-T Rec. V.33: 14400/12000 bps (OKIFAX 2350/2450; option)

#### 1.1.21 Transmission speed

9 sec. per sheet of ITU-T No. 1 sample document

6 sec. per sheet of ITU-T No. 1 sample document

**Note:** This is Phase C time at STD/Resolution and 14400 bps for 6 sec. and 9600 bps for 9 sec. in MMR code transmission.

#### 1.1.22 Protocol

ITU-T Rec. T.30

OKI special protocols: High-speed protocol

#### 1.1.23 Error correction mode (ECM)

#### 1.1.24 Communication mode

#### Half duplex

#### 1.1.25 Memory capacity

Basic model: 256 k-byte (OKIFAX 1050/2350) 512 k-byte (OKIFAX 2450)
Optional memory: One of 512 k-byte or 1 M-byte memory board can be added. (OKIFAX 1050)
One of 512 k-byte, 1M-byte or 2 M-byte memory board can be added. (OKIFAX 2350/2450)

Note: For OKIFAX 1050, choose either memory board or PC I/F board.

#### 1.1.26 Liquid crystal display (LCD)

Two rows of 20 characters for operation guidance, check and various kinds of information

#### 1.1.27 Power source

Nominal input voltage 120 VAC



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

#### 1.2 General User's Function

1.2.01 Transmit mode
Automatic transmit mode
Manual transmit mode

1.2.02 Receive mode

Automatic receive mode
Manual receive mode
TEL/FAX automatic switchover mode
TAD mode
PC-I/F mode (option)

- 1.2.03 Dual access (OKIFAX 2350/2450)
- 1.2.04 Voice request
- 1.2.05 Automatic redial
- 1.2.06 Last number redial (Manual redial)
- 1.2.07 Local copy including multiple copies
- 1.2.08 Sender identification (Sender ID)
- 1.2.09 Personal identification (Personal ID)
- 1.2.10 Polling transmission
- 1.2.11 Polling reception
- 1.2.12 Acoustic line monitor
- 1.2.13 Telephone handset (option)
- 1.2.14 Automatic alternate call selecting (FAX No. + an alternate FAX No. can be registered in one-touch keys).
- 1.2.15 Delayed transmission (Max. 3 days)

Delayed broadcast (OKIFAX 2350/2450)

Delayed transmission OKIFAX 1050: 5 specified times

OKIFAX 2350/2450: 5 specified times

- 1.2.16 Relay broadcast initiate
- 1.2.17 Confidential message transmission (Hopper (FEEDER TRANSMIT), 1 station)
- 1.2.18 Confidential message reception (Memory)

OKIFAX 1050: 1 mail box

OKIFAX 2350: 8 mail boxes OKIFAX 2450: 16 mail boxes

1.2.19 PHOTO mode

OKIFAX 1050: 16 scale gradations OKIFAX 2350: 32 scale gradations OKIFAX 2450: 64 scale gradations

1.2.20 G3 sequential broadcast (Memory)

Broadcast mode

OKIFAX 1050 (55 stations at maximum) OKIFAX 2350 (84 stations at maximum) OKIFAX 2450 (134 stations at maximum)

Delayed broadcast mode

- 1.2.21 No paper/no toner reception
- 1.2.22 Memory-only reception (OKIFAX 2350/2450)
  (Memory reception even if paper does not run out)
- 1.2.23 Automatic image/text separation (PHOTO mode)
- 1.2.24 Page re-transmission (Only in memory TX mode)
- 1.2.25 Automatic variable reduction printing (Reduction rate is from 100% to 75%.) (Legal to Letter)
- 1.2.26 Image Smoothing printing (In STANDARD and FINE resolutions)
- 1.2.27 Programmed key operation ("F" key + "OT" key)
- 1.2.28 Auto dialing

One-touch dialing OKIFAX 1050: 10 locations

OKIFAX 2350: 15 locations OKIFAX 2450: 30 locations

Two-digit automatic dialing

OKIFAX 1050: 40 locations OKIFAX 2350: 64 locations OKIFAX 2450: 99 locations

Manual Dialing in Broadcast: Up to 5 locations

Keypad dialing Chain dialing Mixed dialing

Group dialing OKIFAX 1050: 5 dialing groups

OKIFAX 2350: 10 dialing groups OKIFAX 2450: 20 dialing groups

- 1.2.29 Realtime dialing
- 1.2.30 Automatic pause signal insertion
- 1.2.31 Manual feeder local copy (OKIFAX 2350/2450)
- 1.2.32 Telephone directory (Alpha search) dialing
- 1.2.33 TEL/FAX automatic switching

- 1.2.34 Time and date printing (RX mode)
- 1.2.35 Closed user group (Direct mail rejection)
- 1.2.36 Transmission contrast and resolution control
- 1.2.37 Key touch tone
- 1.2.38 Printer counter display (For drum, toner, total print)
- 1.2.39 Total page counter (scan)
- 1.2.40 Quick scanning (OKIFAX 2350/2450) 6 sec. minimum ® A4 size, STANDARD resolution **Note:** Not available in OKIFAX 1050.
- 1.2.41 Date and clock adjustment
- 1.2.42 PC interface (option)
- 1.2.43 Language selection 2 languages (LCD)
- 1.2.44 Reports

Activity report

Protocol report (Technical Function)

Message confirmation report (Single or multiple addresses)

Memory entry report (Broadcast)

Transmission error report

Confidential reception report (Personal mailbox RX report)

Configuration report

Telephone directory

Power off report

## **OKIDATA®**

#### Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

#### 1.3 General Maintenance Functions

- 1.3.01 Self-diagnosis FLASH memory check RAM check (MEMORY board: option) Print test
- 1.3.02 Scan calibration (Adjustment of scanning level)
- 1.3.03 LED test
- 1.3.04 Tone send test
- 1.3.05 Multi-frequency (MF) send test
- 1.3.06 High-speed modem send test
- 1.3.07 High-speed modem receive test
- 1.3.08 Tone (TEL/FAX) test
- 1.3.09 Printer cleaning function
- 1.3.10 Remote diagnosis (using RMCS software)
- 1.3.11 System reset
- 1.3.12 Service default report (Technical function settings for service engineer)



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

#### 1.4 General Appearance

Figure 1.4.1 shows the general appearance of the OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450.

Figure 1.4.2 shows the control panel of the OKIFAX 1050.

Figure 1.4.3 shows the control panel of the OKIFAX 2350.

Figure 1.4.3 shows the control panel of the OKIFAX 2450.

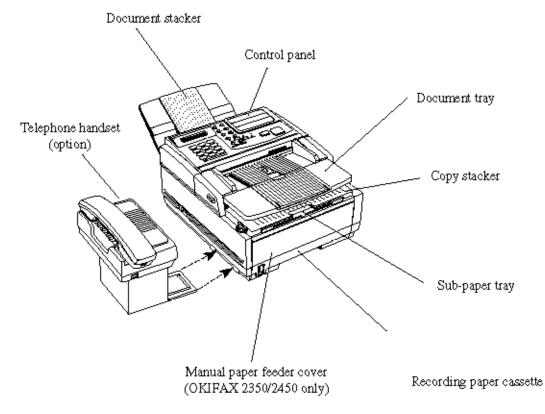
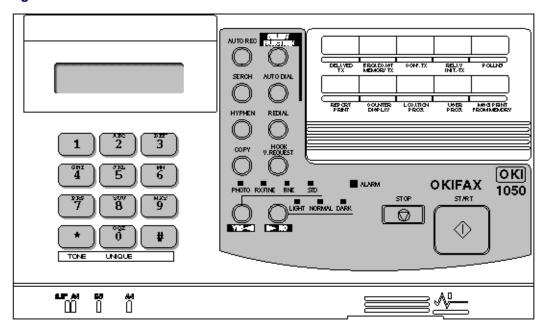


Figure 1.4.1 General Appearance of OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450



**Chapter 1 General Information** 

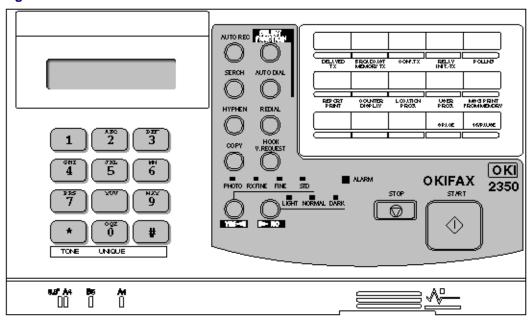
Figure 1.4.2 OKIFAX 1050 Control Panel





**Chapter 1 General Information** 

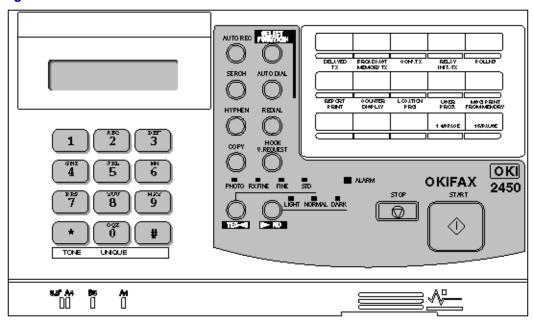
Figure 1.4.3 OKIFAX 2350 Control Panel





**Chapter 1 General Information** 

Figure 1.4.4 OKIFAX 2450 Control Panel





#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

#### 1.5 Basic Performance Specifications

Table 1.5.1 shows basic performance specifications.

#### Note:

**TF:** Technical function setting **FP:** Function program setting **OT:** One-touch key pressed

F: SELECT FUNCTION key pressed

#### Table 1.5.1 (1/10) Basic Performance Specifications

| No.    | No. Item                       |                         | Specifications  |
|--------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Applic | able line                      | 1) Ge                   | eneral switched telephone network (GSTN)  2) Private branch exchange (PBX) (OT9+2)  |
| 2      | Line interface 1) Impedance    |                         | 600W balanced   |
| 3      | Type of document t<br>1) Width | mm).                    | Max. 8.5" (216 mm) (NA Letter) Min. 148 mm (ISO A5 size) Note: Effective reading width is NA Letter (215)                 |
|        | 2) Length                      |                         | Min. 5" (128 mm)<br>Max. 14" (356 mm)   |
|        |                                | minutes<br>document sca | Long document detection: 14" (356 mm), or 60  *TF + 06 (To enable or disable the long anning)                             |
|        | operating s                    | •                       | An operator can turn the long document ure on or off for each call in the   |
|        | 3) Thickness                   |                         | Based on common bond paper,<br>a) 0.08 to 0.13 mm for multiple page feeding<br>b) 0.06 to 0.15 mm for single page feeding |
|        | 4) Shape                       |                         | Rectangular   |
|        | 5) Opacity                     | scanner source          | Documents allowing less than 40% of the ce light to pass through them.  |

| Document<br>width                 | Communication<br>Mode/Paper width | Effective reading width | Copy size |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| ISO A4 (210 mm)<br>[INT'L/FTZ]    | G3/A4                             | 8.2" (208 mm)           | A4        |
| NA letter (216 mm)<br>[US/CANADA] | G3/A4                             | 8.46" (215 mm)          | Letter    |
| NA legal (216 mm)<br>[US/CANADA]  | G3/A4                             | 8.46" (215 mm)          | Legal     |

5 Automatic document feeder (ADF)

Up to 11.7" (297 mm) in length. Max. 30

documents:

NA Letter or A4 (20-1b) Max. 15 documents: NA Letter or A4 (13-28lb bond paper)

Documents shall be placed facedown on ADF

stacker. The first sheet will be fed first in the

feeder and will exit facedown in the document

stacker.

6 Document skew

Max. 2.6 mm skew over a document of 11.7"

(A4) length.

For a document longer than 11.7" (A4) length,

occurrence of skew exceeding 2.6 mm over any

11.7" (A4) length is 0.5% or less.

7 Document jam detection

1) Transmission will stop and line disconnection

will occur when the end of a document is not

detected within 14" (356 mm) after scanning

begins (except for the long document scanning.

TF + 06

2) A jam will also be declared if the document

does not reach the scanning position within 5.5

seconds (OKIFAX 2350/2450)/10 seconds

(OKIFAX1050) after the start of a document

feed.

Note: When a jam is detected during message

transmission from the feeder, the machine will

stop scanning and disconnect the line, but its

receiving capability will remain valid.

8 Manual release

9 Recording paper or sheet

For the first or second recording paper cassette:

1) Type: Plain paper cut (Bond paper)

2) Size: ISO A4 8.26" x 11.7" (210 mm x 297

mm)

NA Letter 8.5" x 11" (215.9 mm x 279.4 mm) NA Legal 8.5" x 14" (215.9 mm x 355.6 mm)

3) Weight: 16 lbs to 24 lbs/base weight

Base weight is defined as the weight of 500 sheets of 17" x 22" (431.8 mm x 558.8 mm).

4) Thickness: 0.08 mm to 0.12 mm

5) Condition: New paper

For the manual loading feeder on the OKIFAX

#### 2350/2450

1) Type: Plain paper, transparency for overhead projector, colored paper, printed paper

2) Size: A4/NA Letter/NA Legal

3) Weight, thickness and condition: Same as

above

papers

Note: One single sheet only should be loaded on the manual loading feeder at a time.

For best results use OKI DATA recommended

1) Xerox 4200 (20 - lb/base weight paper)

2) L-type paper for photo-printers

#### 10 Recording paper cassette

1) First cassette 2

250 sheets/cassette (Okidata recommended

2) Second cassette (Option)

puon)

paper)

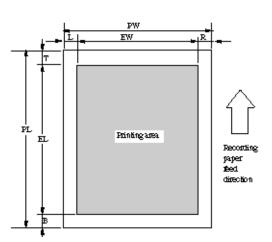
500 sheets/cassette (Okidata recommended

(For OKIFAX 2350/2450) them facedown.

The fax can discharge printed copies and stack

Maximum sheets on the copy stacker: 100\*

#### 11 Effective recording area



Note: These tables do not include vertical and horizontal addressing

## deviations (+ or 2 mm) of recording paper.feed direction

#### 1) Printable area

|    | NA    | LETTERSIZ<br>E | ISO A4 | SIZE | NA LEGAL | SIZE  |
|----|-------|----------------|--------|------|----------|-------|
|    | inch  | mm             | inch   | mm   | inch     | mm    |
| PL | 11    | 279.4          | 11.7   | 297  | 14       | 355.6 |
| PW | 8.5   | 215.9          | 8.3    | 210  | 8.5      | 215.9 |
| EL | 10.76 | 273.3          | 11.46  | 291  | 13.76    | 349.5 |
| EW | 8.18  | 208            | 8.11   | 206  | 8.18     | 208   |
| Т  | 0.12  | 3              | 0.12   | 3    | 0.12     | 3     |
| В  | 0.12  | 3              | 0.12   | 3    | 0.12     | 3     |
| L  | 0.16  | 3.95           | 0.09   | 2    | 0.16     | 3.95  |
| R  | 0.16  | 3.95           | 0.09   | 2    | 0.16     | 3.95  |

|    | NA   | LETTERSIZ<br>E | ISO A4 SIZE |       | NA LEGAL | SIZE  |
|----|------|----------------|-------------|-------|----------|-------|
|    | inch | mm             | inch        | mm    | inch     | mm    |
| PL | 11   | 279.4          | 11.7        | 297   | 14       | 355.6 |
| PW | 8.5  | 215.9          | 8.3         | 210   | 8.5      | 215.9 |
| EL | 10.5 | 266.7          | 11.19       | 284.3 | 13.5     | 342.9 |
| EW | 8    | 203.2          | 7.77        | 197.3 | 8        | 203.2 |
| Т  | 0.25 | 6.35           | 0.25        | 6.35  | 0.25     | 6.35  |
| В  | 0.25 | 6.35           | 0.25        | 6.35  | 0.25     | 6.35  |
| L  | 0.25 | 6.35           | 0.25        | 6.35  | 0.25     | 6.35  |
| R  | 0.25 | 6.35           | 0.25        | 6.35  | 0.25     | 6.35  |

12 Copy stacking \* Okidata recommended paper (20lb)

Scanning resolution Horizontal: 8 pel/mm 13

Vertical:

Transmission mode: 3.85 line/mm (STD), 7.7 line/mm (FINE) or 15.4 line/mm (EX. FINE)

Copy mode: 7.7 line/mm 14 Image scanning method NA Letter size (1728-bit) contact image sensor 15 Contrast control 1) Automatic background sensing A continuous document background of 0.3 OD (optical density) or less will be transmitted as white. 2) The LIGHT and DARK contrasts will automatically be adjusted to improve image quality. 16 Horizontal: 8 dot/mm Recording resolution Vertical: Fixed: 3.85 line/mm (200 x 100 LPI) (STD) 7.7 line/mm (200 x 200 LPI) (FINE, COPY) 17 Recording system Electro-photographic printing A4 size (1728-bit) LED print head 18 Skew of recording paper Maximum allowable skew is + or - 1 mm over an advance of 3.93" (100 mm.) 19 Copy darkness 1) Black image: Greater than 1.0 OD (Optical density) 2) White background: Not greater than 0.2 OD (Optical density) 20 Copy uniformity Printed copies will exhibit a uniform density of the printed and background area: 1) From edge to edge: 25% unit 2) From copy to the next copy: 30% unit 21 Recording paper running out The fax can detect the no-paper condition by a photosensor. When the paper has run out in the local copy operation, the scanning will stop with "NO PAPER ... REPLACE PAPER" on the LCD, and an ALARM LED turns on without an alarm tone. When the paper has run out while a message is being received and the no-paper reception is activated, the LCD display will show "MSG. IN MEMORY", and the ALARM LED turns on. 22 Minimum scan line time 0 ms, when receiving from an OKIDATA for receiving facsimile. 5 ms at 7.7 line/mm and 10 ms at 3.85 line/mm when receiving from a non-OKIDATA facsimile. 23 1) One-dimensional coding scheme: Coding scheme Modified Huffman (MH) 2) Two-dimensional coding scheme: Modified READ (MR)

#### Modified modified READ (MMR)

24 **MODEM** 

1) High-speed MODEM

a) ITU-T Rec. V.29 (9600/7200 bps) b) ITU-T Rec. V.27 ter (4800/2400 bps) c) ITU-T Rec. V.17 (14400/12000/9600/7200

bps); OKIFAX 2450, OKIFAX 2350 (option)

d) ITU-T Rec. V.33 (14400/12000 bps); OKIFAX

2450, OKIFAX 2350 (option)

2) Low-speed MODEM

disconnection.

ITU-T Rec. V.21 channel 2 (300 bps)

25 Fallback

Automatic fallback will occur according to the following sequence by FTT, RTN or PPR.

| Fallback<br>rank | Transmissio<br>n<br>speed | Activated by FTT (Times) | Activated by RTN (Times) | Activated by PPR (Times) | Protocol             |
|------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1st              | 14400 bps                 | 1                        | 1                        | 4 (Note 1)               | ITU-T V.17<br>(V.33) |
| 2nd              | 12000 bps                 | 1                        | 1                        | 4 (Note 1)               | ITU-T V.17<br>(V.33) |
| 3rd              | 9600 bps                  | 1                        | 1                        | 4 (Note 1)               | ITU-T V.17<br>(V.29) |
| 4th              | 7200 bps                  | 1                        | 1                        | 4 (Note 1)               | ITU-T V.17<br>(V.29) |
| 5th              | 4800 bps                  | 2                        | 1                        | 4 (Note 1)               | ITU-T V.27 ter.      |
| 6th              | 2400 bps                  | 2                        | 1                        | 4 (Note 1)               | ITU-T V.27 ter.      |

When the last trial fails, the transmitting station sends out a DCN signal to the remote station for

Note 1: Continuous PPRs for the same partial page within each fallback rank.

Protocol 26

1) ITU-T Rec. T.30

2) OKIDATA special protocol high-speed protocol

The T.30 protocol signal from the transmitting station is sent at message transmission speed instead of 300 bps.

> Note: In high-speed protocol, 14.4 and 12 K-bps are not applied.

27 Transmission time

6 sec./ITU-T No. 1 sample document (OKIFAX 2350/2450, option)

#### 9 sec./ITU-T No. 1 sample document (OKIFAX

1050/2350)

Note: This is Phase C time at 3.85 line/mm and 14400 bps for 6 sec. and 9600 bps for 9 sec. in

MMR code transmission.

28 Error correction ITU-T Error correction mode (ECM)

OKIDATA ITU-T ECM

29 Communication mode Half-duplex

30 Ringing signal detection sensitivity

1) Voltage range 25 to 150 V r.m.s.

Inoperative below 10 V

2) Frequency range 20 to 68 Hz

3) Ring response time One-ringing signal or 5 to 30 seconds.

(Selectable in 5 sec. steps.  $F + OT9 + \neg + 15$ )

#### 31 Image memory

|             | Basic model           | Optional memory           |  |
|-------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|--|
| OKIFAX 1050 | 256K-byte             | 512K-byte/1M-byte         |  |
| OKIFAX 2350 | 256K-byte             | 512K-byte/1M-byte/2M-byte |  |
| OKIFAX 2450 | OKIFAX 2450 512K-byte | 512K-byte/1M-byte/2M-byte |  |

|        | Memory<br>condition             | OKIFAX<br>1050<br>[pages] | OKIFAX<br>2350<br>[pages] | OKIFAX<br>2450<br>A4 Setting<br>[pages] | OKIFAX<br>2450<br>LEGAL<br>Setting<br>[pages] |
|--------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---|---|
| With   | Standard<br>(without<br>option) | 17                        | 17                        | 35                                      | 27  |
| option | 0.5M-byte                       | 56                        | 56                        | 79                                      | 70  |
|        | 1M-byte                         | 100                       | 100                       | 120                                     | 110   |
| board  | 2M-byte                         |                           | 180                       | 200                                     | 195   |

**Note**: No. of sheets is counted provided that ITU-T No.1 sample documents are used.

**Note:** Back-up time on electrical interruption: Min. one hour (OKIFAX 2450 only)

## **Note:** OKIFAX 1050/2350 does not back up the message received in memory for the power

failure.

32 Telephone handset General telephone function is available while the (option)

power is on.

34 Overheat protection The heat of the fuser unit is controlled within

predetermined temperature range by the

thermistor. If the temperature of the

heater exceeds this range, the LCD displays

"PRINTER ALARM 4".

Furthermore, the built-in thermostat in the fuser

unit prevents the fuser from being overheated

even in the event of the failures in the above

temperature control circuit.

35 PC interface applications (Option)

(Applies to EIA class 1)

The following four modes are supported:

1) PC local printer mode

2) PC scanner mode

3) PC transmission mode

4) PC reception mode

36 Power supply unit and power consumption of the machine

| Nominal input<br>voltage<br>Input voltage range<br>Frequency range | 120 VAC<br>102 to 127 VAC<br>50/60 Hz ± 2% |                                  |
|--|--|----------------------------------|
| Power consumption of the machine (Typical power)                   | FX-050                                     | FX-175                           |
| 1) Transmit 2) Receive (*) 3) Local copy(*) 4) Standby             | 22 W<br>183 W<br>208 W<br>9 W              | 25 W<br>227 W<br>330 W<br>12.1 W |

<sup>\*</sup> Chart: ITU-T No. 1 sample document

37 Ambient condition

1) Operating condition See Figure 1.5.1

2) Storage condition See Figure 1.5.1

38 Dimension 1) Width: Approx. 13" (330 mm) (Main body) 2) Depth: Approx. 16.5" (420 mm)

3) Height: Approx. 9.25" (235 mm)

39 Weight Approx. 26.66 lbs (13 kg)

(Main body) Excluding optional units, recording paper and packing materials. 40 Attachment 1) AC power cord x 1 2) Image Drum unit x 1 (Already installed) (to the main body) 3) Toner cartridge x 1 4) Telephone handset x 1 (option) 5) Curled cord and Telephone cord for (#4) x 1 (option) 6) Document stacker x 1 7) Telephone Line cord x 1

8) One touch sheet x 1 (Already installed)

9) User's guide x 1

Temperature and Humidity Conditions

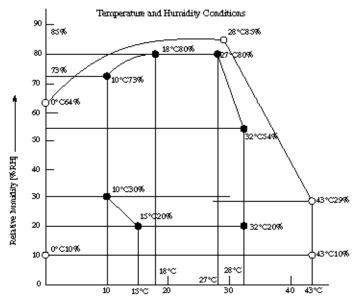


Figure 1.5.1 Ambient Condition

DRY BULB TEMPERATURE [\*C] Area enclosed by lines with . Range where printing is guaranteed. Area enclosed by times with  $\bigcirc$  : Range for storage without power supply. (Note) The curve connecting  $28^{\circ}\text{C}$ , 83% and  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ , 64%is the condensation curve.

for End

## **OKIDATA**°

#### Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

#### 1.6 Reports and Lists

#### Table 1.6.1 (1/23) Reports and Lists Specifications

Table 1.6.1 shows Reports and Lists Specifications.

Note: F +OT: Press FUNCTION and One-touch key

FP: Function program setting TF: Technical function setting

No. **Specifications** Item

1 Call-back message The transmitter sends a call-back message to

the receiver only when the receiver does not

respond to voice request of the transmitter

(Feeder Transmit only)

Note: Sender Id plus Call Back Telephone Number must be programmed to enable this

function.

#### **Call-back Message Format: (Example)**

|     | (1)      |                | (2)        | (3)             |        |
|-----|----------|----------------|------------|-----------------|--------|
|     | 05/19/95 | 09:2 <b>4</b>  | OKI SKIBAU | ы А → ОКІ ЖОМЛО | NO.002 |
| -   |          |                |            |                 |        |
| 1   |          |                |            |                 |        |
| -   | (4)      | PLEASE         | CALL       | BACK            |        |
| -   |          |                |            |                 |        |
| -   | (z)      | OKI SHIBAURA   |            |                 |        |
| -   | (6)      | =103 5476 1234 |            |                 |        |
| -   | (-)      |                |            |                 |        |
| - 1 |          |                |            |                 |        |

#### 2 Sender ID\*

Fax machines use this information to identify themselves during communications. In the United States and most other countries, programming this information into your fax machine is a legal

requirement (for more information,

(1) Date and time

- (2) Sender ID
- (3) CSI/Personal ID
- (4) Letters PLEASE CALL BACK
- (5) Sender ID
- (6) Senders call back telephone number

The fax can transmit a programmed refer to

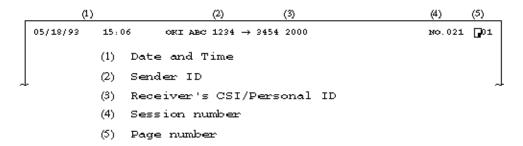
the "Federal Communicaalphanumeric message, such as

> tions Commission Requirements company's name, consisting of up to 32

Users" at the beginning of characters. this manual.

\* (Outside only)

Sender ID Format: (Example)



3 Transmitting subscriber identification (TSI printing

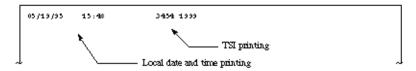
identification (TSI printing Received TSI can be printed at the top of the received page.

\* TF + 10 (To enable or disable this function)

\* TF + 09 Local date and time printing

(OFF/ONCE/ALL pages)

#### TSI Printing and Local Date and Time Printing Format: (Example)



4 Cancel report

The fax can automatically print out a power-off report when the power off condition occurs.

(Power off report)

**Cancel Report Format: (Example)** 

## POWER OFF REPORT

05/19/95 17:05 ID=OKI

#### PLEASE CONFIRM BY THIS REPORT

| TOTAL | TIE   | CALLING=20: | 05' CALLED=15:23  |         |       |        |      |
|-------|-------|-------------|-------------------|---------|-------|--------|------|
| DATE  | TIE   | S,R-TIME    | DISTANT STATION I | D MODE  | PAGES | RESULT |      |
| 05/17 | 10:00 | 00'20"      | OKI FRX           | CRLLED  | 02    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/17 | 10:10 | 00'00"      | 0485-88-3385      | CALLING | 00    | STOP   | 9080 |
| 05/17 | 10:15 | 00'20"      | 0495+22-5400      | CRLLED  | 01    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/17 | 10:30 | 00'00"      | ods takasaki      | CALLING | 00    | NO     | 90C1 |
| 05/17 | 12:05 | 01'20"      | OKI FAX           | BOX=01  | 03    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/17 | 13:00 | 00'20"      | 03-5476-4300      | CALLING | 01    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/17 | 15:40 | 03'25"      | ods takasaki      | CRLLED  | 05    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/17 | 19:00 | 05'20"      | OKI FAX           | CRLLED  | 08    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/18 | 09:03 | 00'20"      | 03-5476-4300      | CRLLED  | 01    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/18 | 10:00 | 00'00"      | OKI FAX           | CRLLING | 00    | STOP   | 9080 |
| 05/18 | 10:10 | 02'00"      | OKI SHIBAURA      | CRLLED  | 03    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/18 | 10:22 | 00'12"      | 0495-22-5400      | CELLING | 00    | STOP   | 9080 |
| 05/18 | 10:50 | 00'20"      | 0495-22-5400      | CRLLED  | 03    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/18 | 12:05 | 00'20"      | OKI FRX           | CELLING | 01    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/18 | 15:00 | 01'30"      |                   | B.C.    |       | COMB   | 6020 |
| 05/18 | 15:30 | 00'20"      |                   | CELLING | 00    | STOP   | 9080 |
| 05/18 | 17:05 | 05'20"      |                   | CELLING | 02    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/18 | 19:04 | 00'20"      | 03-5476-4300      | CELLIN  | 00    | STOP   | 9080 |
| 05/19 | 09:00 | 01'11"      |                   | BOX=01  | 02    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 10:20 | 00'20"      | 03-45476-4300     | CRLLED  | 02    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 10:35 | 02'23"      |                   | CRLLED  | 04    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 10:50 | 00'20"      | ods takasaki      | CRLLED  | 01    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 11:03 | 00'00"      | OKI FAX           | CETTING | 00    | STOP   | 9080 |
| 05/19 | 13:00 | 00'24"      | OKI FRX           | CRLLED  | 01    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 14:02 | 00'20"      | 0495-22-5400      | CRLLED  | 03    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 14:30 | 01'28"      | OKI FRX           | CRLLED  | 03    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 14:45 | 00'21"      |                   | CRLLED  | 01    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 15:11 | 00'50"      | 0495-22-5400      | CRLLED  | 02    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 16:00 | 00'50"      | ods taksaki       | CELLING | 02    | OK     | 0000 |
| 05/19 | 17:05 | 01'30"      |                   | B.C.    |       | COME   | 6020 |

5 Activity report

The fax can print out an activity report manually, or automatically when 30 communications are

recorded.

**Message Confirmation Report Format: (Example)** 

<sup>\*</sup> REPORT PRINTOUT+1(Manual printout)

<sup>\*</sup> TF + 34 (Automatic printout, Default is OFF)

#### (1) ACTIVITY REPORT

- (2) 05/19/95 17:10 (3) ID=≎KI
- (4) TOTAL TDE CALLING=20:05' CRLLED=15:23' TDE S,R-TIME DISTANT STATION ID DATE RESULT MODE PAGES (5) (6) (9) (10)(11)(12)05/17 10:00 00'20" OKI FAX CALLED 02 ŒK 0000 10:10 00'00" 0485-88-3385 CATTIMG STOP 9080 05/17 00 05/17 10:15 00'20" 0495+22-5400 CRLLED 01 0000 05/17 10:30 00'00" ODS TAKASAKI CALLING 00 ж 90C1 12:05 01'20" OKI FAX BOX=01 03 Œ 0000 05/17 13:00 00'20" Œ 0000 03-5476-4300 CALLING 01 05/17 15:40 03'25" ODS TAKASAKI CALLED 05 ŒK 0000 05/17 19:00 OKI FAX OK 05'20" CRILLED 08 0000 05/17 09:03 00'20" 03-5476-4300 CALLED OK 0000 05/18 01 STOP 05/18 10:00 00'00" OKI FRX CALLING 00 9080 05/18 10:10 02'00" OKI SHIBAURA CALLED 03 ŒK 0000 05/18 10:22 00'12" 0495-22-5400 CATTIMG 00 STOP 9080 10:50 00'20" 0495-22-5400 CRLLED Œ 0000 05/18 03 12:05 OKI FAX CALLING 0000 05/18 00'20" 01 05/18 15:00 01'30" B.C. COMP 6020 05/18 15:30 00'20" CALLING 00 STOP 9080 17:05 05'20" CALLING 0000 05/18 ŒK 02 05/18 19:04 00'20" CRELITING STOP 9080 03-5476-4300 00 05/19 00.00 01'11" POX=01 OW 0000 02 00'20" 05/19 10:20 03-45476-4300 CALLED 02 CW 0000 05/19 10:35 02'23" CSLLED 04 OK 0000 05/19 10:50 00'20" ODS TAKASAKI CALLED 01 ŒK 0000 CALLING 05/19 11:03 00'00" OKI FAX 00 STOP 9080 05/19 13:00 00'24" OKI FAX CALLED 01 ŒK 0000 0495-22-5400 05/19 14:02 00'20" CRLLED 03 0000 05/19 14:30 01'28" OKI FAX CALLED 03 0000 05/19 14:45 00'21" CALLED 01 Œ 0000 05/19 15:11 00'50" 0495-22-5400 CALLED 02 Œ 0000 ODS TAKSAKI 05/19 16:00 00'50" CALLING 02 Œ 0000 17:05 COMP 05/19 01'30" B.C. 6020
  - (1) Title of the report
  - (2) Date and time when the report was printed
  - (3) Sender ID
  - (4) Total TX and RX time
  - (5) Date of transmission or reception
  - (6) Time when the communication started
  - (7) Time span of the fax communication.
  - (8) Identification of the remote station

Personal ID/Location ID/TSI/CSI/Dial number or space

(9) Communication mode:

CALLING (Transmission)

CALLED (Reception NG or MEMORY RX)

B. C. (Broadcast)

BOX=XX (Confidential reception)

(10) Number of transmitted pages or received pages

(11) Result code

OK (Note1)/NO/STOP (Note 2)/BUSY/PAPER (Out of recording paper)/S\_JAM (Document

jam)/R\_JAM (Recording paper jam)/COVER/COMP (Completion of a broadcast)/PUNIT

(Printer Alarm)/CANCL (Confidential reception T.O.)

**Note** 1 The following cases are included:

Unmatched handshaking to the received NSF.

Unmatched password to the received NSC in the polling transmission

mode.

**Note** 2: The following cases are included:

The STOP key is pressed.

The memory cancellation operation removes the message from the active memory files.

(12) Service code



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

#### No. Item Specifications

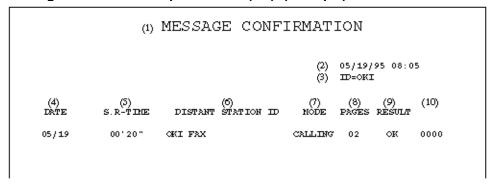
6 Message confirmation report The fax can print out a message confirmation report manually or automatically depending on user set-up.

Note 1: When COPY key is pressed immediately after a single location transmission, this report can be printed (Manual printout)

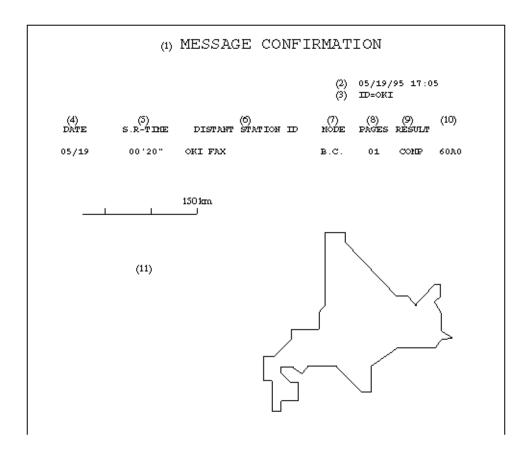
**Note 2:**A portion of the first page of the TX document will be printed just below the message confirmation when sending from

memory.

#### **Message Confirmation Report Format (1/2): (Example)**



Message Confirmation Report Format (2/2): (Example)



- (1) Title of the report
- (2) Date and time when the report was printed
- (3) Sender ID
- (4) Date of transmission or reception
- (5) Length of time for which the fax was connected to the line
- (6) Identification of the remote station

Personal ID/Location ID/TSI/CSI/Dial number

(7) Communication mode

Reference to ACTIVITY REPORT

- (8) Number of transmitted pages or received pages
- (9) Result of the communication

Reference to ACTIVITY REPORT

- (10) Service code
- (11) Portion of the first page transmitted
- 7 Broadcast entry report The fax can print out a broadcast entry report if specified during programming sequence of a broadcast.

**Broadcast Entry Report Format: (Example)** 

|                            | CAST ENTRY F  | THE OWL  |
|----------------------------|---|--|
|                            |   | 05/19/95 17:0<br>ID=OKI                                      |
| LOCATION ID                | LOCATION ID   | LOCATION ID  |
| ONE TOUCH                  |   |  |
| 1 = OT1<br>4 = OT4         | 2 = <b>or</b> 2<br>5 = <b>or</b> 5                          | 3 = OT3  |
| 7 = 014                    | 5 = 0T5<br>8 = 0T8<br>11 = 0T11<br>14 = 0T14                | 9 = 010  |
| 10 = OT10 +1               | 11 = OT11   | 12 = OT12  |
| 13 = OT13                  | 14 = OT14   | 15 = OT15 *2   |
| 10 - 0110                  | 17 = OT17   | 6 = or6<br>9 = or9<br>12 = or12<br>15 = or15 +2<br>18 = or18 |
| 19 = OT19<br>22 = OT22     | 17 = 0717<br>20 = 0720<br>23 = 0723<br>26 = 0726            | 21 = 0T21<br>24 = 0T24                                       |
| 25 = OT22<br>25 = OT25     | 26 = OT26   | 27 = OT27  |
| 28 = OT28                  | 29 = OT29   | 30 = OT30 +3   |
| AUTO DIAL                  |   |  |
| 01 = AD1                   | 02 = AD2  | 03 = AD3   |
| 04 = AD4                   | 05 = AD5  | 06 = AD6   |
| 07 = AD7<br>10 = AD10      | 05 = AD5<br>08 = AD8<br>11 = AD11<br>14 = AD14<br>17 = AD17 | 09 = AD9<br>12 = AD12  |
| 10 - AD10<br>13 = AD13     | 14 = AD14   | 12 - AD12<br>15 = AD15                                       |
| 16 = AD16                  | 17 = AD17   | 18 = AD18  |
| 19 = AD19                  |   | 21 = AD21  |
| 22 = AD22<br>25 = AD25     | 23 = AD23   | 24 = AD24<br>27 = AD27                                       |
| 28 = AD28                  | 23 = AD23<br>26 = AD26<br>29 = AD29<br>32 = AD32            | 21 = AD21<br>30 = AD30                                       |
| 31 = AD31                  | 32 = AD32   | 33 = AD33  |
| 34 = AD34                  | 35 = AD35   | 36 = AD36  |
| 37 = AD37<br>40 = AD40 +1  | 38 = AD38   | 39 = AD39<br>42 = AD42                                       |
| 40 = AD40 **1<br>43 = AD43 | 38 = AD38<br>41 = AD41<br>44 = AD44                         | 42 = AD42<br>45 = AD45                                       |
| 46 = AD46                  | 47 = AD47   | 48 = AD48  |
| 49 = AD49                  | 50 = AD50   | 51 = AD51  |
| 52 = AD52<br>55 = AD55     | 53 = AD53<br>56 = AD56                                      | 54 = AD54<br>57 = AD57                                       |
| 55 = AD55<br>58 = AD58     | 50 = AD50<br>59 = AD59                                      | 57 = AD57<br>60 = AD60                                       |
| 61 = 8061                  | 62 = 8062   | 63 = AD63  |
| 64 = AD64 +2               | 65 = AD65<br>68 = AD68                                      | 66 = AD66  |
| 67 = AD67<br>70 = AD70     | 68 = AD68   | 69 = AD69  |
| KEYPAD                     |   |  |
| 1234                       |   |  |
| 2345                       |   |  |
| 3456<br>4567               |   |  |
| 2501                       |   |  |
|                            |   | MAX  |
|                            |   | OT AD KEY  |
|                            |   | +1 OKIFAX 1050:10 40 5<br>+2 OKIFAX 2350:15 64 5             |
|                            |   | *2 OKIFAX 2350:15 64 5                                       |

8 Broadcast confirmation report The fax can print out a broadcast confirmation report manually or automatically, depending on user set-up.

\* COPY key (Manual printout): Pressed immediately after a broadcast, will enable the manual printing of a broadcast confirmation

report.

+ REPORT PRINTOUT + 2 (Manual printout)
\* FP +02 (To enable or disable automatic

printing)

**Broadcast Confirmation Report Format: (Example)** 

| BROADC  PAGES = 01 START TIME = 05/19 17 TOTAL TIME = 00:02'30 | : 02  | ONFIRMA | ATION REPORT 05/19/95 1D=0KI |       |        |
|--|-------|---------|------------------------------|-------|--------|
| LOCATION ID  | PAGES | RESULT  | LOCATION ID                  | PAGES | RESULT |
| ONE TOUCH  |       |         |                              |       |        |
| 1 = OT1  | 01    | OEK     | 2 = OT2                      | 01    | OEK    |
| 3 = <b>⊘T</b> 3  | 01    | OK      | 4 = OT4                      | 01    | OK(    |
| 5 = <b>⊘</b> T5  | 01    | OK      |                              |       |        |
| AUTO DIL   |       |         |                              |       |        |
| 01 = AD1   | 01    | OEK     | 02 = AD2                     | 01    | OEK    |
| 03 = AD3   | 01    | OK      | 04 = AD4                     | 01    | OEK    |
| 05 = AD5   | 01    | OEK     |                              |       |        |
| KEYPAD   |       |         |                              |       |        |
| 1234   | 01    | OK      |                              |       |        |
| 3456   | 01    | OK      |                              |       |        |
| 5678   | 01    | OK .    |                              |       |        |
|  | -     |         |                              |       |        |

9 Confidential reception report The fax can print out this report automatically on completion of a confidential reception.

## **Confidential Reception Report Format: (Example)**

|       | CONI    | FIDENTIAL R     | X REP  | ORT          |                |      |
|-------|---------|-----------------|--------|--------------|----------------|------|
|       |         |                 |        | 05/1<br>ID=0 | 9/95 17:<br>KI | : 05 |
| Data  | S.R-TDE | DISTANT STATION | HODE   | PAGES        | RESULT         |      |
| 05/17 | 00'20"  | OKI DATA        | BOX=01 | 02           | OK             | 0000 |
|       |         |                 |        |              |                |      |

10 Telephone directory

This directory is printed manually. (REPORT PRINTING +3)

See following sections for examples.



**Chapter 1 General Information** 

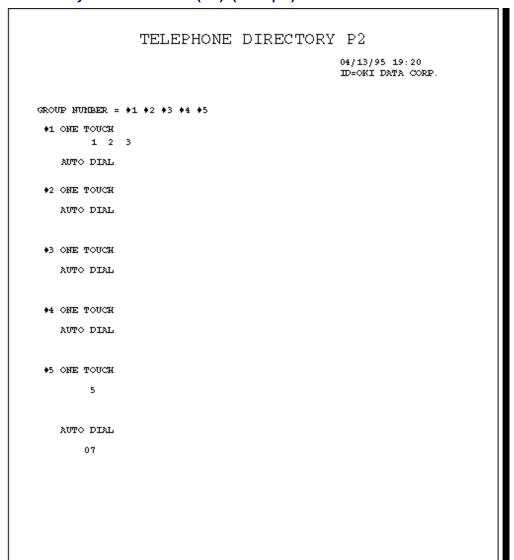
## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 1050 (1/2): (Example)**

|                |                 | 04/13/   | 95 19:19   |
|----------------|-----------------|--|------------|
|                |                 |  | DATA CORP. |
|                | LOCATION ID     | TEL NO.  | PRH. ECHO  |
| ONE TOUCH<br>1 | OKI SERVICE     | 0R 123 123 123<br>OR 111 222 333   | (OFF)      |
| 2              | OKI OFFICE      | 00 1 111 222 333<br>00 1 111 222 333<br>00 1 111 222 333<br>00 1 111 222 333 | (OFF)      |
|                | OOKI LABORATORY | 7 789 789 789<br>OR 777 888 999  | (OFF)      |
|                | ODC TAKASAKI    | 000 111 222<br>OR 2 111 555 666  | (OFF)      |
|                | odc ga/gc lab.  | 0R 1234 5678 90123<br>0R 123 123 123   | (OFF)      |
| 6              |                 | or 🛱   | (OFF)      |
| 7              |                 | ∞r <b>∤</b>  | (OFF)      |
| 9              |                 | ∞ ₿  | (OFF)      |
| 10             |                 | ∞ <b>B</b>   | (OFF)      |
| AUTO DIAL      |                 | or D   | (OFF)      |
| 02<br>03       |                 | 녆  |            |
| 04<br>05       |                 | Ŕ  |            |
| 06<br>07       | ODC TAKASAKI    | 0273 28 6357   |            |
| 08<br>09       |                 | <b>B</b>   |            |
| 10<br>11<br>12 |                 | 녆  |            |
| 13<br>14       |                 | Ħ  |            |
| 15<br>16       |                 | B  |            |
| 17<br>18       |                 | 8  |            |
| 19<br>20       |                 | 片  |            |
| 21<br>22<br>23 |                 | Ŕ  |            |
| 24<br>25       |                 | Ħ  |            |
| 26<br>27       |                 | <b>B</b>   |            |
| 28<br>29       |                 | E  |            |
| 30<br>31<br>32 |                 | Ħ  |            |
| 32<br>33<br>34 |                 | ***************************************                                      |            |
| 35<br>36       |                 | B  |            |
| 37<br>38       |                 | <b>□</b>   |            |



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

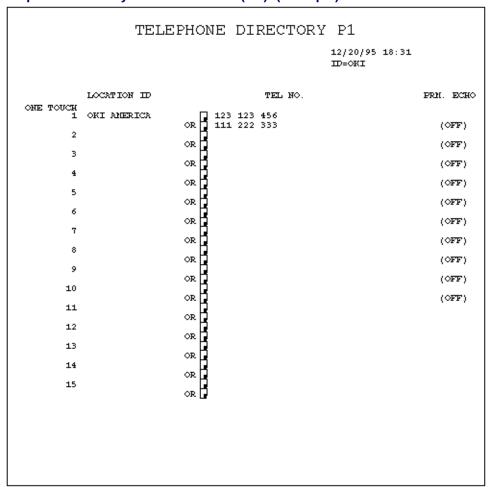
## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 1050 (2/2): (Example)**





**Chapter 1 General Information** 

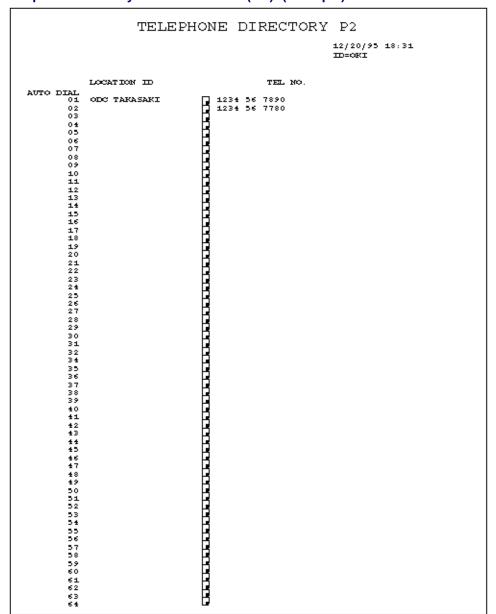
## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2350 (1/4): (Example)**





**Chapter 1 General Information** 

## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2350 (2/4): (Example)**





**Chapter 1 General Information** 

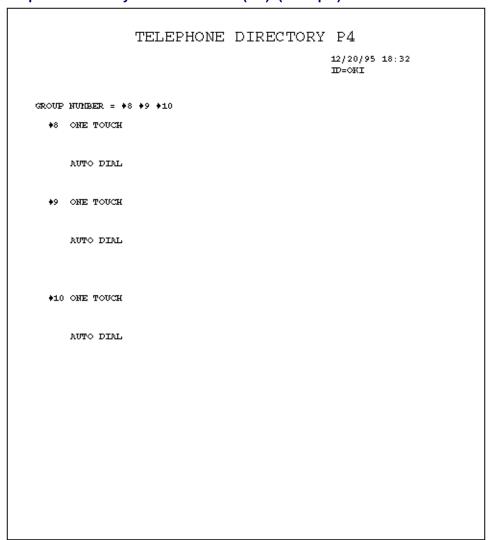
## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2350 (3/4): (Example)**

```
TELEPHONE DIRECTORY P3
                                               12/20/95 18:32
                                               ID=OKI
GROUP NUMBER = +1 +2 +3 +4 +5 +6 +7
 *1 ONE TOUCH
         1 2 3
     AUTO DIAL
          03 05
 ♦2 ONE TOUCH
     auto dial
 *3 ONE TOUCH
     AUTO DIAL
 *4 ONE TOUCH
     AUTO DIAL
  ♦5 ONE TOUCH
     AUTO DIAL
  ♦6 ONE TOUCH
     auto dial
  ♦7 ONE TOUCH
     AUTO DIAL
```



**Chapter 1 General Information** 

## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2350 (4/4): (Example)**





#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (1/6): (Example)**

|                |             |       |                      | 05.14        | 0.105 47.05       |
|----------------|-------------|-------|----------------------|--------------|-------------------|
|                |             |       |                      | 05/1<br>ID=0 | .9/95 17:05<br>KI |
|                | LOCATION ID |       |                      | TEL NO.      | FRII. ECHO        |
| OME TOUCH<br>1 | OKI SERVICE | or 3  | 0001                 |              | (ON)              |
| 2              | one         | or or | 0002                 |              | (OFF)             |
| 3              | NEW YORK    | or .  | 0003                 |              | (OFF)             |
| 4              | OT4         | or I  | 0004<br>0104         |              | (OFF)             |
| 5              | OT5         | or I  | 0005<br>0105         |              | (OFF)             |
| 6              | OT6         | or .  | 0006<br>0106         |              | (OFF)             |
| 7              | or?         | or I  | 0007                 |              | (OFF)             |
| 8              | or8         | or I  | 0008                 |              | (OFF)             |
| 9              | OT9         | or I  | 0009<br>0109         |              | (OFF)             |
| 10             | ori0        | or    | 0010<br>0110         |              | (OFF)             |
| 11             | ori         | or    | 0011<br>0111         |              | (OFF)             |
| 12             | OT2         | or.   | 0012<br>0112         |              | (OFF)             |
| 13             | <b>0T</b> 3 | or.   | 0013                 |              | (OFF)             |
| 14             | OT4         | or    | 0014<br>0114         |              | (OFF)             |
| 15             | <b>0T</b> 5 | or.   | 0015<br>0115         |              | (OFF)             |
| 16             | <b>0T</b> 6 | or.   | 0016<br>0116         |              | (OFF)             |
| 17             | or7         | or.   | 0017<br>0117         |              | (OFF)             |
| 18             | or8         | or.   | 0018<br>0118         |              | (OFF)             |
| 19             | OT9         | or .  | 0019<br>0119         |              | (OFF)             |
| 20             | or10        | or .  | 0020<br>0120         |              | (OFF)             |
| 21             | ori         | or .  | 0021<br>0121         |              | (OFF)             |
| 22             | OT2         | or.   | 0022<br>0122         |              | (OFF)             |
| 23             | <b>0T</b> 3 | or .  | 0023<br>0123         |              | (OFF)             |
| 24             | OT4         | or .  | 0024<br>0124         |              | (OFF)             |
| 25             | OT5         | or .  | 0025<br>0125         |              | (OFF)             |
| 26             | OT6         | or .  | 0026<br>0126         |              | (OFF)             |
| 27             | or?         | or.   | 0027                 |              | (OFF)             |
| 28             | OT8         | or .  | 0028<br>0128         |              | (OFF)             |
| 29             | OT9         | or .  | 0029<br>0129<br>0030 |              | (OFF)             |
| 30             | ori0        | or .  | 0030                 |              | (OFF)             |

Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (2/6): (Example)**

| TELEPH  | HONE DIRECTOR   | Y P2                     |
|---|---|--------------------------|
|   |   | 05/19/95 17:05<br>ID=OKI |
| LOCATION ID   | TEL NO.   |                          |
| IOCATION ID   | TEL NO.  O001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1025 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1038 1038 1038 1038 1038 1038 1038 1038 |                          |
| 60 AD60<br>61 AD61<br>62 AD62<br>63 AD63<br>64 AD64 | 1060<br>1061<br>1062<br>1063<br>1064  |                          |



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (3/6): (Example)**

|                    |                      | 05/19/95 17:05<br>ID=OKI |
|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| LOCATION ID        | TEL                  | NO.                      |
| Mo dial            |                      |                          |
| 65 AD65            | 1065                 |                          |
| 66 AD66<br>67 AD67 | 1066<br>1067         |                          |
| 68 AD68            | 1068                 |                          |
| 69 AD69            | 1069                 |                          |
| 70 AD60            | 1070                 |                          |
| 71 AD71            | R 1071               |                          |
| 72 AD72<br>73 AD73 | 1072<br>1073         |                          |
| 74 AD74            | H 1074               |                          |
| 75 AD75            | 1075                 |                          |
| 76 AD76            | 1076                 |                          |
| 77 AD77            | 1077                 |                          |
| 78 AD78            | 1078<br>1079         |                          |
| 79 AD79<br>80 AD80 | 1079                 |                          |
| 81 AD81            | 1081                 |                          |
| 82 AD82            | <b>1</b> 082         |                          |
| 83 AD83            | <b>1</b> 083         |                          |
| 84 AD84<br>85 AD85 | R 1084               |                          |
| 05 XD05<br>86 XD86 | 1085<br>1086         |                          |
| 87 AD87            |                      |                          |
| 88 AD88            | 1087<br>1088<br>1089 |                          |
| 89 AD89            | R 1089               |                          |
| 90 AD90<br>91 AD91 | 1090<br>1091         |                          |
| 92 ND92            | 1092                 |                          |
| 93 AD93            | 1093                 |                          |
| 94 AD94            | 1094                 |                          |
| 95 AD95            | 1095                 |                          |
| 96 AD96<br>97 AD97 | 1095<br>1096<br>1097 |                          |
| 91 XD91<br>98 XD98 | 5 1098               |                          |
| 99 AD99            | 1099                 |                          |
|                    | 3                    |                          |
|                    |                      |                          |
|                    |                      |                          |
|                    |                      |                          |
|                    |                      |                          |



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (4/6): (Example)**

|                    | Τ                        | ΈI   | Æ.           | PH           | 101  | ΊE | Ι  | )II | RE | C. | PO. | RY |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|--------------------|--------------------------|------|--------------|--------------|------|----|----|-----|----|----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|                    | 05/19/95 17:05<br>ID=0KI |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| GROUP NUMBER = +1  | <b>*2 *3</b>             | 3 +4 | . <b>+</b> 5 | . <b>+</b> 6 | 5 +7 | ,  |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ♦1 ONE TOUCH       |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 01 02 0<br>26 27 2 |                          |      | 06           | υγ           | 08   | 09 | 10 | 11  | 12 | ננ | 14  | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 |
| &UT≎ DI&L          |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 01 02 0<br>26 27 2 |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 51 52 5            | 3 54                     | 55   | 56           | 57           | 58   | 59 | 60 | 61  | 62 | 63 | 64  | 65 | 66 | 67 | 68 | 69 | 70 | 71 | 72 | 73 | 74 |    |
| 76 77 7            | 8 79                     | 80   | 81           | 82           | 83   | 84 | 85 | 86  | 87 | 88 | 89  | 90 | 91 | 92 | 93 | 94 | 95 | 96 | 97 | 98 | 99 |    |
| ♦2 ONE TOUCH       |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| auto dial          |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ♦3 ONE TOUCH       |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| XUTO DIXL          |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ♦4 ONE TOUCH       |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| auto dial          |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ♦5 ONE TOUCH       |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| auto dial          |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| ♦6 ONE TOUCH       |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| auto dial          |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|                    |                          |      |              |              |      |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (5/6): (Example)**

|             |             | TELEPHO      | ONE    | DIRECTO    | ORY | P5                       |  |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------|------------|-----|--------------------------|--|
|             |             |              |        |            |     | 05/19/95 17:05<br>ID=OKI |  |
| GROUP:      | NUMBER = +8 | +9 +10 +11 + | 12 +13 | <b>→14</b> |     |                          |  |
| •8          | ONE TOUCH   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             | auto dial   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             |             |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
| •9          | ONE TOUCH   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             | XOTO DIXL   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
| <b>*1</b> 0 | ONE TOUCH   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             | auto dial   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             |             |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
| *11         | ONE TOUCH   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             | AUTO DIAL   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
| 440         | ONE TOUCH   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
| 712         | AUTO DIAL   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             |             |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
| <b>*13</b>  | ONE TOUCH   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             | AUTO DIAL   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             |             |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
| *14         | ONE TOUCH   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             | AUTO DIAL   |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
|             |             |              |        |            |     |                          |  |
| I           |             |              |        |            |     |                          |  |



## **Chapter 1 General Information**

## **Telephone Directory for OKIFAX 2450 (6/6): (Example)**

# TELEPHONE DIRECTORY P6 05/19/95 17:05 ID=OKI GROUP NUMBER = +15 +16 +17 +18 +19 +20 \*15 ONE TOUCH AUTO DIAL \*16 ONE TOUCH AUTO DIAL ♦17 ONE TOUCH AUTO DIAL ♦18 ONE TOUCH AUTO DIAL ♦19 ONE TOUCH AUTO DIAL \$20 ONE TOUCH AUTO DIAL



#### **Chapter 1 General Information**

No. Item Specifications

11 Configuration report This report is printed manually. (REPORT PRINTING +4)

Configuration Report Format:

Configuration Report: Service bit=OFF

| C  | ONFIGURATION                          |                               |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| FUNCTION LIST  |                                       | 05/19/95 17:05<br>ID=OKI      |
| 01:MCF (SINGLE-LOC.)<br>ON                                 | 02:MCF (MULTI-LCC.)<br>OFF            | 03:SENDER ID<br>ON            |
| 04:MONITOR VOLUME<br>LOW                                   | 05:REMOTE DIRG.<br>OFF                | 06:CLOSED NETWORK<br>OFF      |
| 07:TX MODE DEFAULT<br>FINE/NORMAL                          | 08:257/ <b>∏</b> /TIMER PRG.<br>3526C | 09:BUZZER VOLUME<br>MIDDLE    |
| 10:1'ST PAPER SIZE<br>%4                                   | 11:2'ND PAPER SIZE *1<br>A4           | 12:SELECT LANGUAGE<br>ENGLISH |
| 13 : RINGER<br>ON  | 14:REMOTE RECEIVE<br>OFF              | 15:RING RESPONSE<br>1RING     |
| 16:MEM./FEEDER SWITCH<br>MEMORY                            |                                       |                               |
| TEL NO. = 0123<br>CALL BACK NO. = 1234                     |                                       |                               |
| REDIAL TRIES 3TRY<br>DIAL TONE OFF<br>MF(TONE)/DP(PULSE)MF | REDIAL INTERVAL<br>BUSY TONE          | ON<br>SMIN                    |
|  | PEX LINE<br>ACCESS DIGIT              | off<br>off                    |
| auto start on  |                                       |                               |

<sup>\*1:</sup> When second paper cassette (is installed and paper size is programmed, 2'nd paper size will appear in No. 11.

Service Default Report (Configuration Report: Service bit=ON)

<sup>\*2:</sup> OKIFAX 1050/2350 only.

| <u>-</u>  |                             |                            |
|---|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| C   | ONFIGURATION                |                            |
| FUNCTION LIST   |                             | 05/19/95 17:05<br>ID=OKI   |
|   | 02:MCF (MULTI-LCC.)         | 03:SENDER ID<br>ON         |
| 04:NONITOR VOLUME   | 05:REMOTE DIAG.             | 06: CLOSED METWORK         |
| LOW   | OFF                         | OFF                        |
| 07:TX NODE DEFAULT<br>FINE/NORMAL                                 | 08:=/ <b></b>               | 09:BUZZER VOLUME<br>NIDDLE |
| 10:1'ST PAPER SIZE  | 11:2'ND PAPER SIZE *1       | 12: SELECT LANCVACE        |
| At  | A4                          | ENCLISH                    |
| 13 : RINGER   | 14:REMOTE RECEIVE           | 15:RING RESPONSE           |
| ON  | OFF                         | 1RING                      |
| 16:NEM./FEEDER SWITCH<br>NEMCRY                                   |                             |                            |
| TEL NO. = 0123<br>CALL BACK NO. = 1234                            |                             |                            |
| REDIAL TRIES STRY<br>DIAL TONE OFF<br>NF(TONE)/DF(FULSE)NF        | REDIAL INTERVA<br>BUSY TONE |                            |
| FULSE DIAL RATE 10FPS FULSE NAKE RATIO 398 FULSE DIAL TYPE MORNAL |                             |                            |
| NF(TONE) DURATION 100NSE<br>AUTO START ON<br>FTT PARAM. USA       | C FEX TYPE                  | NORMAL                     |
| 01: SERVICE BIT   | 02:NONITOR CONT.            | 03: ERR. RESPORT (MCF)     |
| ON  | OFF                         | ON                         |
| 04:TOME FOR ECHO  | 005:OFF HOOK BYPASS         | 06:LONG DOC. SCAN          |
| OFF   | OFF                         | OFF                        |
| 07:NL EQUALIZER<br>4 DB   | 1007<br>1007<br>1007        | 09:TSI/TIME PRINT<br>OFF   |
| 10:TSI PRINT  | 11:NO TONER HER.RX          | 12:TAD NODE                |
| OFF   | OFF                         | ON                         |
| 13: REAL TIME DIAL  | 14:TEL/FAX SW               | 15-16:ATTENUATOR           |
| TYPE2   | ON                          | 10 DB                      |
| 17-18:T/F TOME ATT  | 19-20:NF.ATT                | 21-22:RIMG DURA. + 10HS    |
| 10 DB   | 10 DB                       | 11                         |
| 23-24:CML TIMING + 100MS  | 25-27:TI TO VALUE           | 28-31:HEAD STROBE          |
| 03  | 060                         | 0110                       |
| 32:1H ONLY  | 33: H/HODEN RATE            | 34:ACTIV FRT FRINT         |
| OFF   | 9.6K                        | ON                         |
| 35:RX SPLIT PRINT   | 36: HEAD WILTH              | 37: PACE NEW SIZE *2       |
| OFF   | 2081DL                      | A4                         |

<sup>\*1:</sup> When second paper cassette is installed and paper size is programmed, 2nd paper size will appear in No.11.

# \*2: For OKIFAX 2450

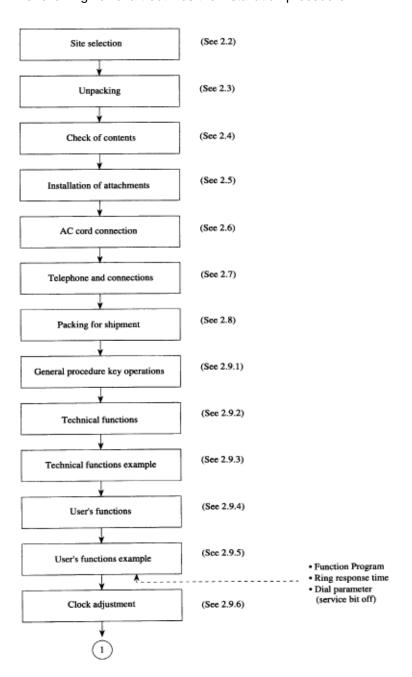


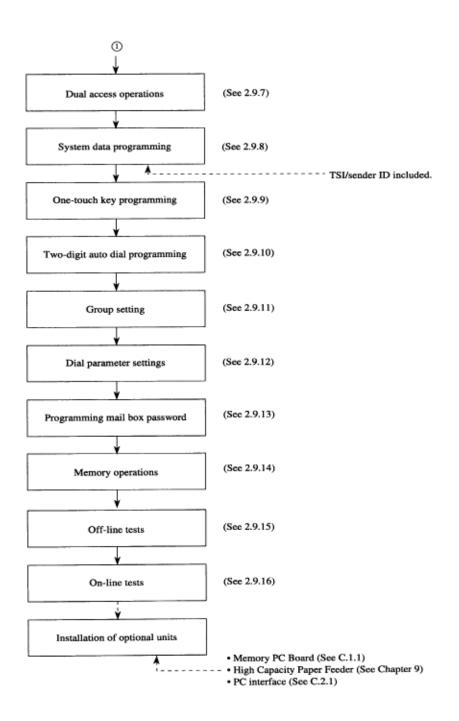
**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

## A. Setup Information

#### 2.1 General

The following flowchart outlines the installation procedure.





Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)

Page: 31



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

## **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

#### 2.2 Site Selection

#### **INSTALLATION**

Precautions for Installation

- 2.2.01 Fluctuation in line voltage 120VAC (102V to 127V)
- 2.2.02 Room temperature 50 to 90°F (10 to 32°C)
- 2.2.03 Humidity 20 to 80% RH
- 2.2.04 Operating environment

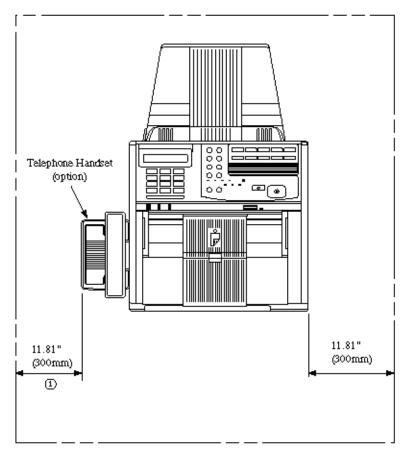
Pressure: Equivalent of altitude of 8200 feet (2500 m) and below.

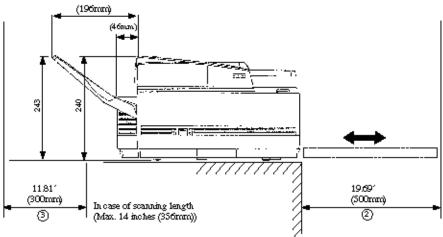
2.2.05 Exposure

Within five minutes at luminous intensity 2,000 lux (with the stacker cover opened).

2.2.06 Required space for installation

The facsimile requires the space as shown below for safety and good operability.





#### Note:

- 1 This space is necessary for handling the handset. (option) (page 2-3)
- 2 This space is necessary for removing the recording paper cassette.
- 3 This space is necessary for installing the document stacker and to allow space for the fan exhaust.
- 2.2.07 Levelness of installation surface 1 degree max.
- 2.2.08 Other requirements

Avoid installing in any of the following places:

A location exposed to direct sunlight

A location near a heat source or exposed to vibration

A dusty location

A location with an atmosphere of acid gas, or steam etc.,

A location exposed to quick temperature changes

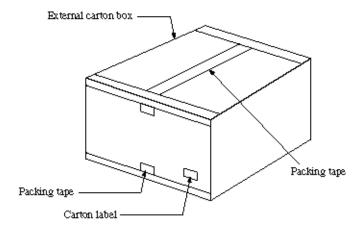


**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

## 2.3 Unpacking

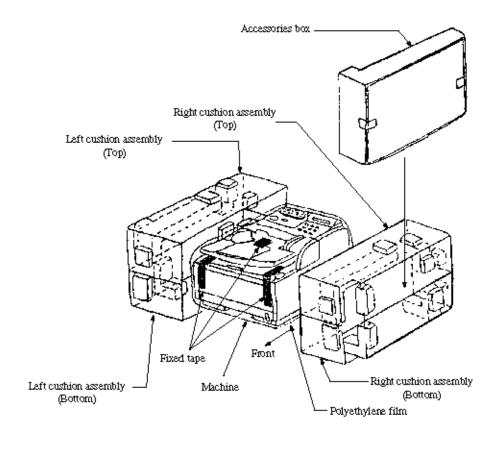
#### **Procedure**

2.3.01 Remove tape on the top of the carton box and open its cover.



.Figure 2.3.1 Unpacking Procedure (1)

- 2.3.02 Take out the accessory box from the carton box. (See Figure 2.3.1 below)
- 2.3.03 Take out the machine with plastic wrapper from the box



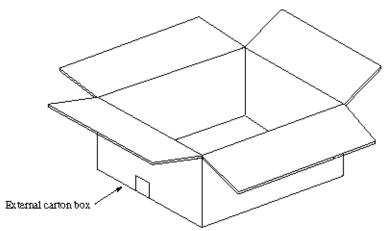


Figure 2.3.1 Unpacking Procedure (2)

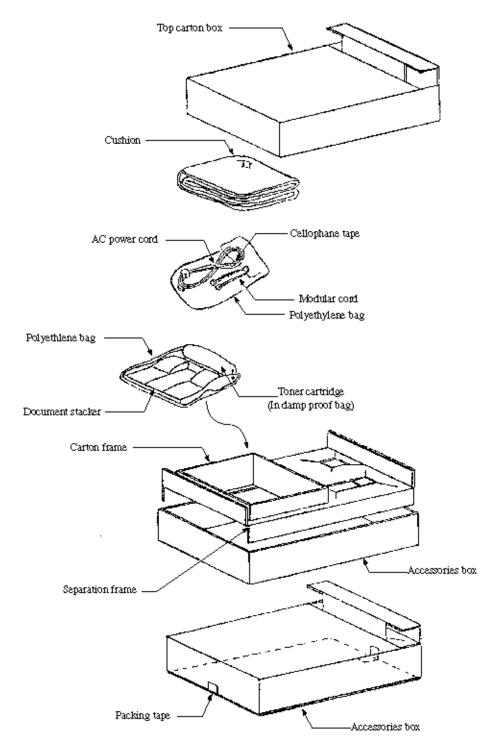


Figure 2.3.2 Unpacking Procedure (3)



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

#### 2.4 Check of Contents

After removing the machine and accompanying accessories from the carton box, check the contents according to the following list:

**Table 2.4.1 Contents List** 

| Item No. | Name                                  | Qty    | Remarks            |
|----------|---------------------------------------|--------|--------------------|
| 1        | OKIFAX<br>1050/2350/2450<br>facsimile | 1      |                    |
| 2        | AC power cord                         | 1      |                    |
| 3        | I/D unit                              | 1      | Already installed. |
| 4        | Toner cartridge                       | 1      |                    |
| 5        | Document stacker                      | 1      |                    |
| 6        | Line cord                             | 1      |                    |
| 7        | 7 User's guide                        | 1 vol. | ODA                |

Page: 34



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

## 2.5 Installation of Attachments

#### 2.5.01 Items

Image Drum (ID) Unit (already installed) Toner cartridge Recording paper Document stacker

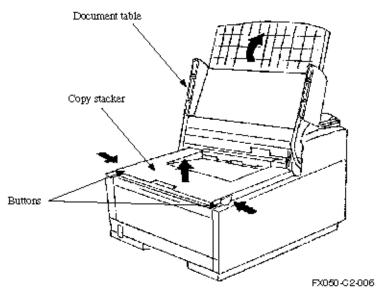


**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

## 2.5.02 Procedure

## Toner cartridge

- Peel off the fixed tape attached on the copy stacker.
- Open the document table and copy stacker.



.Figure 2.5.1 Toner Cartridge Installation (1)

• Take the cushion out of the ID unit

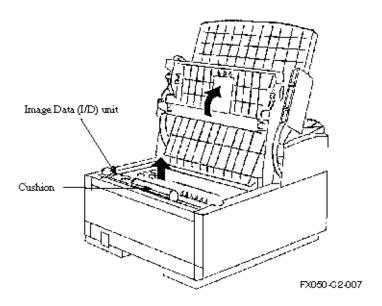


Figure 2.5.2 Toner Cartridge Installation (2)

#### Installation of Attachments - Continued

• Take out the toner cartridge from the damp proof bag, shake it five or six times as shown in the illustration to eliminate the toner deflection, and peel off the seal gently.

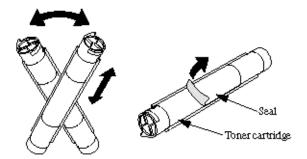


Figure 2.5.3 Toner Cartridge Installation (3)

- Ensure that the plastic tab on the right-hand side of the toner cartridge recess lines up with the groove on the toner cartridge.
- Press down on both ends to make sure the cartridge is fully seated.

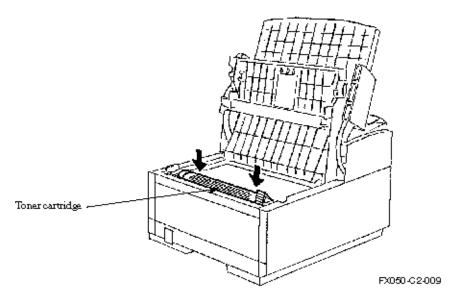


Figure 2.5.4 Toner Cartridge Installation (4)

Push the blue tab forward until it stops.

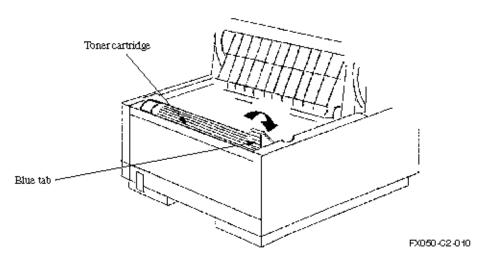


Figure 2.5.5 Toner Cartridge Installation (5)

- Clean the toner scattered in the vicinity of the toner cartridge using a cloth moistened with cold water. Do not use hot water since it makes the toner stick.
- Close the copy stacker so that both latches are locked completely.



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

#### **Recording paper**

**Note:** About 250 sheets of the new paper can be set in the recording paper cassette.

• Remove the paper cassette from the facsimile by pulling it straight out.

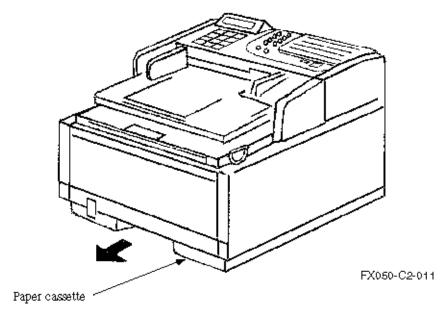


Figure 2.5.6 Recording Paper Cassette Installation (1)

- Sheets must not exceed the paper full marker of the new paper limit indication. If excessive sheets are loaded, it will cause paper jams.
- After loading the new paper, push the cassette forward into the slot at the front of the facsimile until it locks.

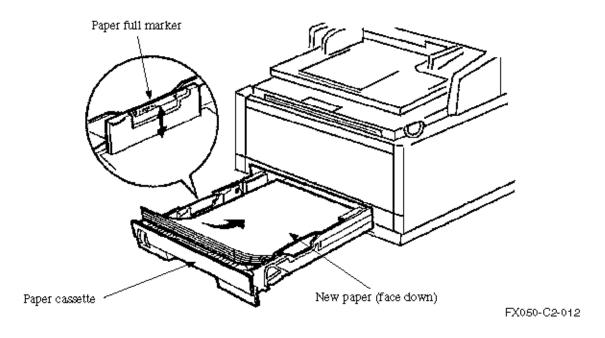


Figure 2.5.7 Recording Paper Cassette Installation (2)



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### **Document stacker**

• Hang the document stacker onto the stacker pins.

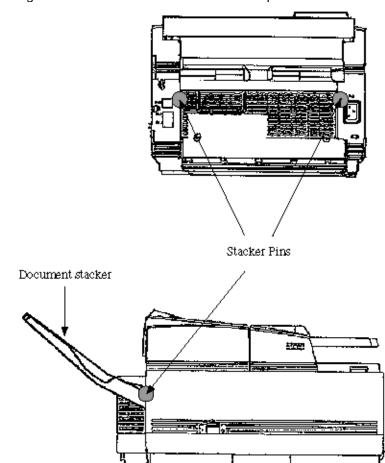


Figure 2.5.8 Document Stacker Installation



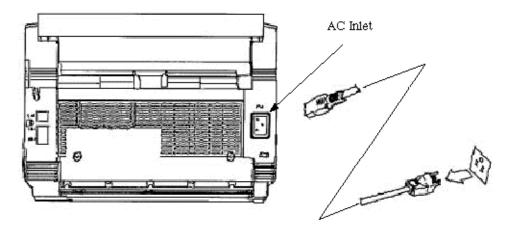
**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

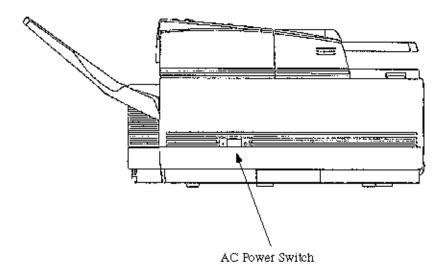
### 2.6 AC Cord Connection

The power supply is provided as follows.

Nominal input voltage 120VAC (Voltage range 102 to 127VAC)

Check whether the AC voltage of your input is within the above-mentioned voltage range and if so, check that the power switch is turned OFF. After turning off the power switch, connect the female plug of the AC cord to the machine and insert the male plug of the AC cord to the inlet receptacle. Turn the power switch ON and check that the display shows "(Time)" message indicating the standby mode.





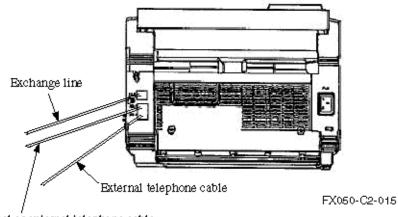


**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

## 2.7 Telephone and Line Connections

#### 2.7.01 Procedure

Connect the lines.



Internal or external telephone cable

**Note:** For US version, telephone cable can be inserted into either upper side or lower side of telephone terminal.

**Figure 2.7.1 Telephone and Line Connections** 



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### 2.8 Packing for Shipment

CAUTION: When packing the OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450 for shipment, REMOVE THE IMAGE DRUM AND TONER FROM THE UNIT AND SHIP SEPARATELY! Failure to do this will result in damage to the machine.



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

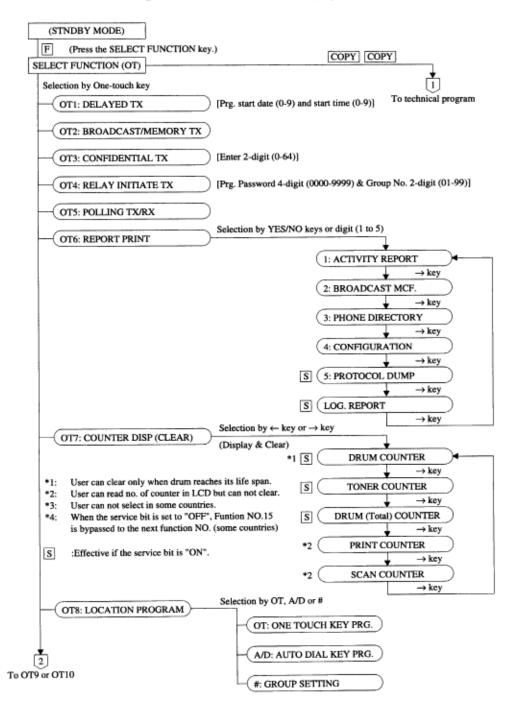
## **B. Programming and Initial Settings**

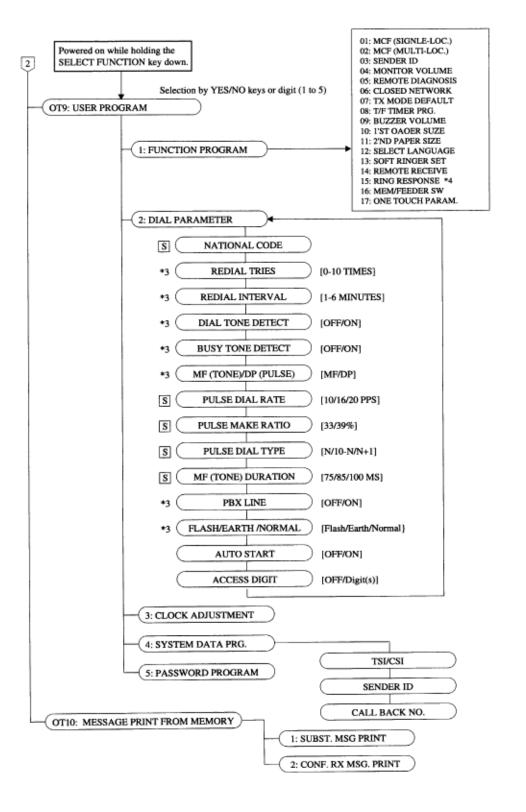
## 2.9 Initial Settings

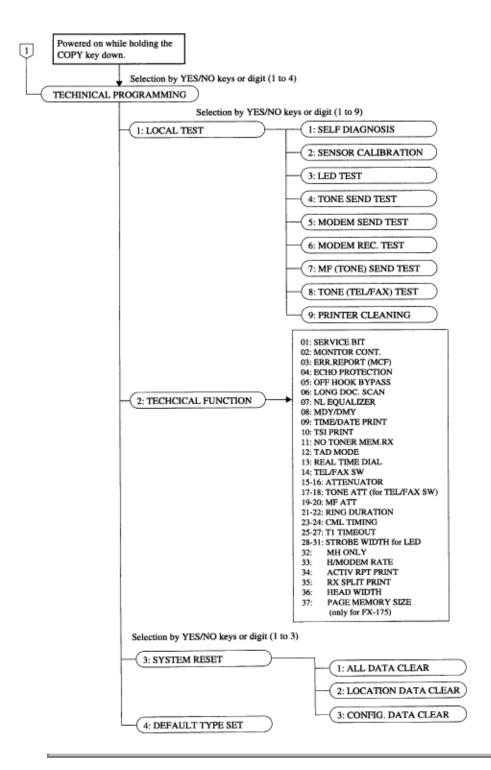
# 2.9.1 General Procedure of Key Operation

Figure 2.9.1 shows the general procedure of key operation.

Figure 2.9.1 General Procedure of Key Operations







Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

#### 2.9.2 Technical Functions

This section explains setting items generally conducted by service personnel, not by users.

Table 2.9.1 shows the initial setting items and their purposes. (The default setting is different by the individual countries.) Each item can be accessed by entering the corresponding service number on Technical Function.

The detailed procedures of the initial setting items will be explained on the following pages.

**Note:** S-ON: Effective if the service bit has been set to ON.

**FP:** Function program setting **TF:** Technical function setting

The display shows: (For Example)

| *<br>1 | 0<br>1 | 0<br>2 | 0<br>3 | 0<br>4 | 0<br>5 | 0<br>6 | 0<br>7 | 0<br>8 | 0<br>9 | 1<br>0 | 1<br>1 | 1<br>2 | 1<br>3 | 1<br>4 | 1<br>5 | 1<br>6 | 1<br>7 | 1<br>8 | 1<br>9 | 2<br>0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| *<br>2 | 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 2      | 1      | 5      | 0      | 9      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      |
| *      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 3      | 0      | 5      | 9      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      |        |        |        |
| *<br>1 | 2      | 2      | 2      | 2<br>4 | 2<br>5 | 2<br>6 | 2<br>7 | 2<br>8 | 2<br>9 | 3<br>0 | 3<br>1 | 3<br>2 | 3      | 3<br>4 | 3<br>5 | 3<br>6 | 3<br>7 | 3<br>8 | 3<br>9 | 4 0    |

Note 1: \*1: Technical Function Number.

\*2: Function assignment of LCD upper row.\*3 Function assignment of LCD lower row.

### Note 2:

OFF=0, ON=1 MDY=0, DMY=1

without EQL=0, EQL1=1, EQL2=2, EQL3=3 (for cable EQL)

OFF=0, TYPE1=1, TYPE=2 (for REAL TIME DIAL and TAD MODE)

OFF=0, ONCE=1, ALL=2 (for TIME/DATA PRINT)

0dB~15dB=00~15(ATTENUATOR etc.)

100ms~990ms=10~99 (for RING DURATION: x 10ms)

100ms~1900ms=01~19 (for CML TIMING: x 100ms)

000sec.~255sec.=000~255 (T1 TIMEOUT VALUE: x 1sec.)

14.4k=0, 9.6k=1, 4.8k=2

LEGAL=0, A4=1 208MM=0, 216MM=1

Table 2.9.1 (1/8) Service Personnel Initial Settings

| TF No. | No. Item  | Specifications   | Default           |            |   |
|--------|---|--|-------------------|------------|---|
| 01     | Service bit   | Switching serviceman/user o  | peration.         | OFF<br>(0) |   |
|        |   | ON (1): Service personnel's f<br>OFF (0): Service personnel's<br>able.   |                   | able.      |   |
|        |   | To enable or disable the follo • Drum (Total) and toner cou • Protocol dump • Dial parameters  |                   |            |   |
| 02     | Line monitor control                                      | Changing the audible monito FP +04 (To select the loudne   |                   | OFF (0)    | = |
|        |   | ON (1): Enable<br>OFF (0): Disable   |                   |            |   |
|        | be swi  | <b>Note:</b> In case of transmission rewill be available during dialing, tched off automatically after the especified time (about 5 sec.).   | but the monitor w |            |   |
| 03     | Error report (MCF)<br>MCF: Message Confirmation<br>Report | Enables or disables the automomessage confirmation report u communicationerror.  |                   | OFF<br>(0) |   |
|        |   | ON (1): Printing the error report which is different from FP No. 2 out for each single location.   |                   |            |   |
|        |   | OFF (0): Disable   |                   |            |   |
| 04     | Echo protection   | Enables echo suppression for pecho, usually during overseas. This bit setting controls the following the setting controls the following the setting controls the following the setting controls the setting control controls the setting control controls the setting control contr | transmission.     | OFF<br>(0) |   |

| Echo Protection | OFF (0) | ON (1)  |
|-----------------|---------|---------|
| Ignore 1st DIS  | OFF     | ON      |
| CED-DIS timer   | 75 ms   | 1.5 sec |
| Tone for echo   | OFF     | ON      |

ON (1): Enable OFF (0): Disable

06 Long document SCAN Enables the transmission of long-size document OFF (more than 14" (356 mm).

> ON (1): Unlimited OFF (0): 14" (356 mm.)

07 Cable equalizer Determining the adequate equalizing level of the

cable. EQL1, EQL2, EQL3 and without EQL are

selectable.

| Setting value | Setting for OKIFAX 2350 and OKIFAX 2350 with 14.4 Kbps modem | Setting for OKIFAX 1050 and OKIFAX 2350 with 9.6Kbps modem |
|---------------|--|--|
| 0             | without EQL  | without EQL  |
| 1             | EQL1   | EQL3 *1  |
| 2             | EQL2   | EQL3 *1  |
| 3             | EQL3   | EQL3 *1  |

<sup>\*1:</sup> The equalizer is effective for both sending and receiving sides.

*Note:* By this adjustment you can tune up your equipment to the inversed characteristic of the cable. Figure 2.9.2 shows the characteristics of the cable equalizer.

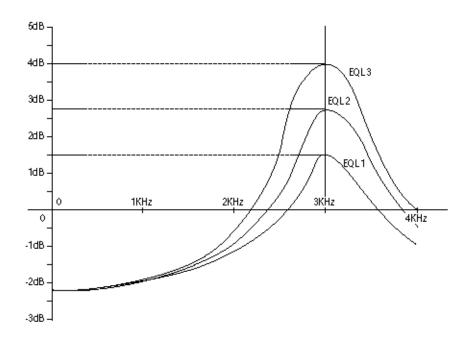


Figure 2.9.2 Characteristics of the Cable Equalizer (EQL1, EQL2 and EQL3)

|    |                     | from month/day/year to day/month/year or vice versa. MDY=0, DMY=1                                 | (0)        |
|----|---------------------|---|------------|
| 09 | Time and date print | Enables or disables the function of printing local date and time at the top of the received page. | OFF<br>(0) |

**Note:** User programming of this function is an FCC requirement.

| Time and date print | Setting |
|---------------------|---------|
| OFF                 | 0       |
| ONCE                | 1       |
| ALL pages           | 2       |

Note: Set at receiver.

|    |                           | Except memory reception.  |           |
|----|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| 10 | TSI print                 | Enables the printing of TSI data from a remote fax onto the received pages. TSI is printed at the leading edge of first reproduced copy. (Set at receiver.) | ON<br>(1) |
|    |                           | When TF09 is set to "ALL", TSI is printed for the all received pages.   |           |
|    |                           | ON (1): Enable<br>OFF (0): Disable  |           |
|    |                           | (Reference) TSI; Transmitting Subscriber Identification   |           |
| 11 | No-toner memory reception | Enables or disables the memory reception when the fax is in no toner condition.   | ON<br>(1) |
|    |                           | When TF09 is set to "ALL", TSI is printed for the all received pages.   |           |
|    |                           | ON (1): Enable<br>OFF (0): Disable  |           |
|    |                           | (Reference) TSI; Transmitting Subscriber Identification   |           |
| 11 | No-toner memory reception | Enables or disables the memory reception when the fax is in no toner condition.   | ON<br>(1) |
|    |                           | ON (1): The messages are printed when toner has been newly supplied or an operator per-forms the memory operation (OT10).                                   |           |
|    |                           |   |           |

OFF (0): The messages are printed in the print mode. But print quality is not guaranteed.

12 TAD mode (For external telephone answering device). Allows the OKIFAX to share a telephone line with an answering device.

TYP2 (2)

TAD mode is of two types (TYPE1/TYPE2).

| TAD mode | Setting |
|----------|---------|
| OFF      | 0       |
| TYPE1    | 1       |
| TYPE2    | 2       |

#### TYPE1 means:

- 1. RING comes.
- 2. The TAD answers, returns the recorded voice mes-sage in TAD to calling party.
- 3. The FAX machine will continue to detect CNG while TAD works.
- 4. If the FAX machine detects CNG signal, the fax will go into normal receiving mode.
- 5. Even though the fax does not detect CNG signal, the fax will go to receiving mode when answering machine disconnects.

TYPE2 means:

Same as TYPE1 (above) except No. 5 (listed

below).

5. If the fax does not detect CNG signal during

TAD operation, the machine will go to standby

mode.

13 Real time dialing

Enables or disables this feature.

TYP2

3 types selectable.

(2)

| Туре  | Setting |
|-------|---------|
| OFF   | 0       |
| TYPE1 | 1       |
| TYPE2 | 2       |

TYPE1: Real-time dialing is available when the optional telephone handset is OFF-HOOK. TYPE2: Real-time dialing is available when the optional telephone handset is OFF-HOOK or

#### HOOK key is pressed.

14 TEL/FAX switching

Enables or disables the TEL/FAX automatic ON switching. If this function is disabled, (1) TEL/FAX mode will not appear as a receive option.

ON (1): Enable OFF (0): Disable

(Related item: FP08, TF17-18)

15 Modem attenuator

Adjusts the attenuation (dB) for the message 10 dB send signal power level.

Adjusting value is 0 to 15 dB in one dB steps.

Since the maximum send signal power level
(dB) of the fax is at 0 dB, you can select
0 dB to -15 dB in one dB steps for the send

signal power level.

**Note:** The send signal power level should meet your country's regulation. Some countries may specify the power level at a telephone

exchange.

In that case, you should subtract the specified level from the line cable attenuation to determine the send level of your fax.

| Bit 15 | Bit 16 | dB |
|--------|--------|----|
| 0      | 0      | 0  |
| 0      | 1      | 1  |
| 0      | 2      | 2  |
| 0      | 3      | 3  |
| 0      | 4      | 4  |
| 0      | 5      | 5  |
| 0      | 6      | 6  |
| 0      | 7      | 7  |
| 0      | 8      | 8  |
| 0      | 9      | 9  |

| Bit 15 | Bit 16 | dB |
|--------|--------|----|
| 1      | 0      | 10 |

| 1 | 1 | 11 |
|---|---|----|
| 1 | 2 | 12 |
| 1 | 3 | 13 |
| 1 | 4 | 14 |
| 1 | 5 | 15 |

| 17 | T/F tone attenuator | Adjusts the attenuation (dB) for the tone send signal                    | 10 dB |
|----|---------------------|--|-------|
| 18 | (for TEL/FAX SW)    | for TEL/FAX switching.<br>Adjusting value is 0 to 15 dB in one dB steps. |       |

| Bit 17 | Bit 18 | dB |
|--------|--------|----|
| 0      | 0      | 0  |
| 0      | 1      | 1  |
| 0      | 2      | 2  |
| 0      | 3      | 3  |
| 0      | 4      | 4  |
| 0      | 5      | 5  |
| 0      | 6      | 6  |
| 0      | 7      | 7  |
| 0      | 8      | 8  |
| 0      | 9      | 9  |

| Bit 17 | Bit 18 | dB |
|--------|--------|----|
| 1      | 0      | 10 |
| 1      | 1      | 11 |
| 1      | 2      | 12 |
| 1      | 3      | 13 |
| 1      | 4      | 14 |
| 1      | 5      | 15 |

| T.F.<br>No. | Item | Specifications | Default |
|-------------|------|----------------|---------|
| NO.         |      |                |         |

| 19 | MF attenuator | Adjusts the attenuation (dB) for the send MF tone power level. | 6 dB |
|----|---------------|--|------|
| 20 |               | Adjusting value is 0 to 15 dB in one dB                        |      |

| Bit 19 | Bit 20 | dB |
|--------|--------|----|
| 0      | 0      | 0  |
| 0      | 1      | 1  |
| 0      | 2      | 2  |
| 0      | 3      | 3  |
| 0      | 4      | 4  |
| 0      | 5      | 5  |
| 0      | 6      | 6  |
| 0      | 7      | 7  |
| 0      | 8      | 8  |
| 0      | 9      | 9  |

| Bit 19 | Bit 20 | dB |
|--------|--------|----|
| 1      | 0      | 10 |
| 1      | 1      | 11 |
| 1      | 2      | 12 |
| 1      | 3      | 13 |
| 1      | 4      | 14 |
| 1      | 5      | 15 |

| T.F.<br>No. | Item                         | Specifications  | Default     |
|-------------|------------------------------|---|-------------|
| 21          | Ring duration detection time | Selects the minimum ring detection time to meet country's requirements. | 120<br>(MS) |
| 22          |                              | Adjusting time is 100 MS to 990 MS in 10 MS steps.                      | , ,         |

For example: (120 ms)

| Bit 21 | Bit 22 |
|--------|--------|
| 1      | 2      |

## 12 x 10 ms = 120 ms

| T.F.<br>No. | Item       | Specifications  | Default     |
|-------------|------------|---|-------------|
| 23          | CML timing | Selects the time from end of ring to CML-ON. Adjusting time is 100 MS to 1900 MS in 100 MS steps. | 300<br>(MS) |

24

| Bit 23 | Bit 24 |
|--------|--------|
| 0      | 3      |

For example: (300 ms)

 $03 \times 100 \text{ ms} = 300 \text{ ms}$ 

| T.F.<br>No.    | Item                              | Specifications  | Default     |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|---|-------------|
| 25<br>26<br>27 | T1, timeout value<br>(XTTO value) | Registers the time duration (in seconds) for which the fax waits for the remote station's answer. This timer starts when the last dial digit has been sent in the automatic transmission mode. As the special case, when 000 is selected, the following predetermined values will be used. * Selects the 3 digit timer (000 to 255 sec) | 59<br>(Sec) |

For example: (59 sec)

| Bit 25 | Bit 26 | Bit 27 |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 0      | 5      | 9      |

| T.F.<br>No. | Item | Specifications | Default |
|-------------|------|----------------|---------|
| NO.         |      |                |         |

| 28<br>29<br>30 | Strobe for LED head | Setting of LED print head strobe signal.   | 0110 |
|----------------|---------------------|--|------|
| 31             |                     | Note 1: When the rank marking of the new re-placed LED print head (new part) is same as that of the old used LED print head (old part), you do not always have to set the LED print head strobe signal.  Note 2: Intensity ranking is determined by the first, second and third digits from the right on the LED print |      |
|                |                     | head serial number (i. e. in S/N056, 056 is the intensity ranking.)  |      |

|                 | Tec<br>hnic<br>al | No. 31 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|                 | Fun<br>ctio<br>n  | No. 30 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
|                 |                   | No. 29 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
|                 |                   | No. 28 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Rank<br>Marking |                   |        |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| ~<br>056        |                   |        | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 057 ~<br>063    |                   |        |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 064 ~<br>071    |                   |        |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 072 ~<br>080    |                   |        |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 081 ~<br>090    |                   |        |   |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 091 ~<br>101    |                   |        |   |   |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 102 ~<br>113    |                   |        |   |   |   |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 114 ~<br>127    |                   |        |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 128 ~<br>143    |                   |        |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| 144 ~<br>160 |  |  |  |  |  | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------|--|--|--|--|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 161 ~<br>180 |  |  |  |  |  |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |
| 181 ~<br>202 |  |  |  |  |  |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |
| 203 ~<br>227 |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |
| 228 ~<br>256 |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   | * |   |   |
| 257 ~<br>287 |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   | * |   |
| 288 ~        |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |   |   |   |   | * |

| T.F.<br>No. | Item                     | Specifications   | Default      |
|-------------|--------------------------|--|--------------|
| 32          | MH only                  | Switches the function of limiting image compres-sion only to the MH codes. ON (1): Coding scheme is MH only. When the receiving image data is affected by noise on the telephone line. OFF (0): Any of MH, MR and MMR. | OFF<br>(0)   |
| 33          | High-speed<br>modem rate | Specifies the modem's starting speed, 14.4k, 9.6k, or 4.8kbps. When 9.6k modem is installed, the default value is set to "9.6k (1)".   | 14.4k<br>(0) |

| Modem Rate | Setting |
|------------|---------|
| 14.4 k     | 0       |
| 9.6 k      | 1       |
| 4.8 k      | 2       |

| T.F. | Item | Specifications | Default |
|------|------|----------------|---------|
| No.  |      |                |         |

| 34 | ACTIV RPT PRINT (activity report print) | Enables or disables the automatic printing of the activity report when 30 communications have been recorded in the internal memory.  ON (1): Automatic printing OFF (0): Disable  | 14.4k<br>(0)             |
|----|---|---|--------------------------|
| 35 | RX split print                          | Specifies whether to print a received document longer than the recording paper size with splitting into the upper and lower parts or to print it only for the portion covered by one recording paper sheet without splitting.  ON (1): Splitting OFF (0): No splitting. | OFF (0)                  |
| 36 | Head width                              | You should confirm the head width by the following table, and then select it by this setting. (Refer to 4.2.1.)   | 8.19"<br>(208<br>MM) (0) |

| Head width        | Head label | Setting |
|-------------------|------------|---------|
| 8.19" (208<br>mm) | 1115G2     | 0       |
| 8.5" (216 mm)     | A4 200     | 1       |

| T.F.<br>No. | Item  | Specifications  | Default    |
|-------------|---|---|------------|
| 37          | Page memory size<br>(only for OKIFAX<br>2450) | Selects the page memory size for A4 and LEGAL in order to use the message memory effectively.  LEGAL (1): Available LEGAL A4 (0): Not available LEGAL  Note: In OKIFAX 2450, if you print out Legal size documents, you should select LEGAL setting.  Reduction from LEGAL to LETTER is avail-able only when Legal size is selected by this function. | LEG<br>(0) |



### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

#### 2.9.2.02 TEL/FAX automatic switching

This function is used for the purpose of TEL/FAX automatic switching as follows.

If the machine detects a call with a **CNG** signal indicating an auto send facsimile call, it starts an automatic document receiving operation.

If machine detects a call without a **CNG** signal, machine generates the buzzer sounds as a telephone call. The calling person can hear a ring back tone for up to 35 seconds.

If the operator at the called side does not lift the handset within 35 seconds, the machine automati-cally starts a document receiving operation. Voice conversation will automatically be available through the internal handset by lifting up the handset while the call buzzer is sounding.

Note: In this mode, following four settings are required.

- 1: The predetermined time is selectable between 20 or 35 sec. (Function program No. 08)
- 2: No ringing signal is sent to the external telephone handset.



### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

#### 2.9.2.03 TAD mode

TAD: Telephone Answering Device

TAD can be connected to external telephone terminal to record your messages.

TAD records your speech and switches an automatic voice message response to the calling station.

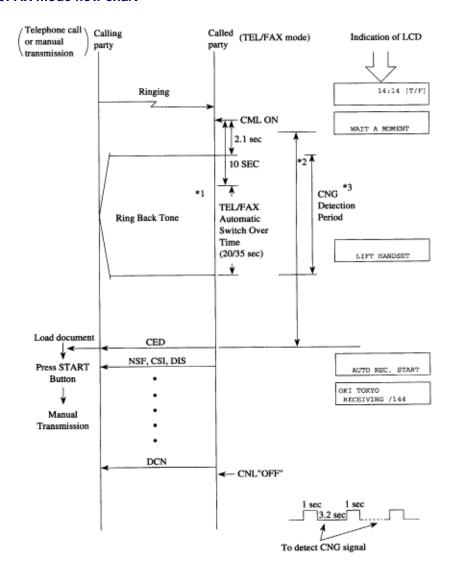
Note 1: A choice of TAD mode is available by Technical Function No. 12.

**Note 2:** The predetermined time is selectable between 20 or 35 sec. (35 seconds is recommended for proper operation)

**Note 3:** Choice of message sending level. The level is selectable from 0 to 15 dB in one dB step. (Technical function No. 17, 18)

**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

## **TEL/FAX** mode flow chart



FX050-C2-018

#### Notes:

- \*1: Ring Back Tone 1 sec. ON, 3.2 sec. OFF
- \*2: When you want to talk by phone, pick up handset.

- \*3: The called party can send CED to the calling party immediately to start FAX communication if the CNG is detected during the period.
- \*4: If the fax does not detect CNG signal during working of TEL/FAX mode, LCD display indicates "LIFT HANDSET".

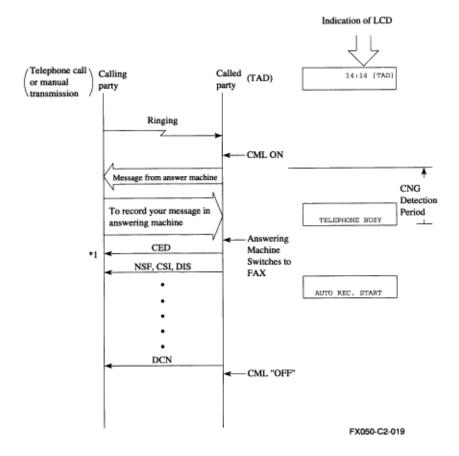


**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

#### **TAD** mode flow chart

- In case of TYPE 1;

Even though the fax does not detect CNG signal, the fax will go to receiving mode.



\*1 To enable the manual TX mode. Load document → Press START button → Manual transmission

\*1 To enable the manual TX mode.

Load document ---> Press START button ---> Manual transmission

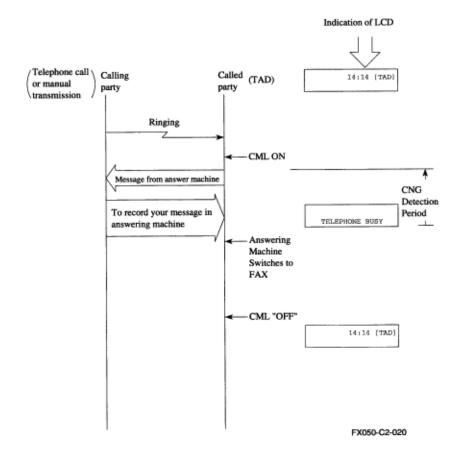


**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### **TAD** mode flow chart

In case of TYPE 2:

If the fax does not detect **CNG** signal during working of TAD, the machine will go to standby mode.





### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

### 2.9.3 Technical Functions Example

### 2.9.3.01 Service Bit Setting

#### Purpose

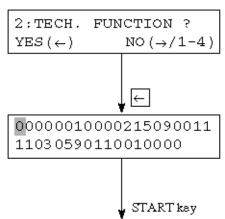
To enable or disable the following functions:
Drum and toner counter display (clear)
Service default report printing
Protocol dump report printing
Ring response time setting
Dial parameters setting
Printer counters clearing

#### Procedure

#### **Operations:**

- To bring the LCD up to the desired message press SELECT FUNCTION key once, COPY key twice and "2" key. (In case of no message in memory)
- Press the key.
- Service bit setting is T.F. No. 1.
- Set to "1 (ON)" or "0 (OFF)" by using Ten-key pad and press the START key to register.

### The display shows:



Reference: See Figure 2.9.1 in the next section for the general operation flow.



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

#### 2.9.3.02 Technical functions

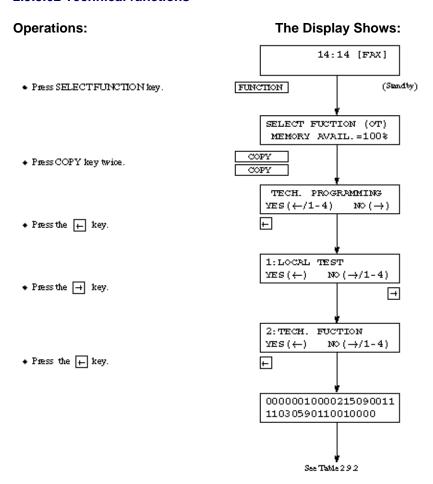


Figure 2.9.1 General Operation Flow



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# Table 2.9.2 (1/3) Technical Functions

| T.F<br>No. | Name of Function                                    | The Display Shows  |
|------------|---|--|
| 01         | Service bit   | ©0000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)  |
| 02         | Line monitor control                                | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)  |
| 03         | Error report (MCF) MCF: Message Confirmation Report | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)  |
| 04         | Echo protection                                     | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)  |
| 05         | Off-hook bypass                                     | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)  |
| 06         | Long document transmission                          | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)  |
| 07         | Non-loaded (NL) cable equalizer                     | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>08                        |
| 08         | MDY/DMY format                                      | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (MDY), 1 (DMY) |

| 09 | Time and date print | 00000010 <mark>000210090011</mark><br>11030590110010000 |
|----|---------------------|---|
|    |                     | Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ONCE), 2 (ALL page)                |



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# Table 2.9.2 (2/3) Technical Functions

| T.F<br>No. | Name of Function   | The Display Shows  |
|------------|--|--|
| 10         | TSI print  | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)  |
| 11         | No toner memory reception                                    | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)  |
| 12         | TAD mode<br>(For external telephone<br>asnwering<br>device.) | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (TYPE1), 2 (TYPE2)  |
| 13         | Real-time dialling   | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (TYPE1), 2 (TYPE2)  |
| 14         | TEL/FAX switching  | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)  |
| 15<br>16   | Modem attenuator   | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 00 (OdB)~15 (15dB)<br>Refer to 2.9.1 Service Personnel Initial Setting |
| 17<br>18   | T/F tone attenuator  | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 00 (OdB)~15 (15dB) Refer to 2.9.1<br>Service Personnel Initial Setting |

| 19<br>20 | MF attenuator                | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 00 (OdB)~15 (15dB) Refer to 2.9.1<br>Service Personnel Initial Setting |
|----------|------------------------------|--|
| 21<br>22 | Ring duration detection time | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 10 (100ms)~99 (990ms), 10 ms steps                                     |



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# Table 2.9.2 (3/3) Technical Functions

| T.F<br>No.           | Name of Function                  | The Display Shows  |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 23<br>24             | CML timing                        | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (100ms)~19 (1900ms),<br>100ms steps. |
| 25<br>26<br>27       | T1, timeout value<br>(XTTO value) | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 000 (000 sec)~255(255sec)              |
| 28<br>29<br>30<br>31 | Strobe width for LED head         | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)                        |
| 32                   | MH only                           | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)                        |
| 33                   | High-speed modem rate             | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (14.4k), 1 (9.6k), 2 (4.8)k          |
| 34                   | Activity report print             | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)                        |
| 35                   | RX split print                    | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON)                        |

| 36            | Head width | 00000010000210090011<br>11030590110010000<br>Setting: 0 (208mm), 1 (216mm) |
|---------------|------------|--|
| 38<br> <br>40 | Not used   | 00000010000210090011<br>11130591100000                                     |



#### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

#### 2.9.4 Users Functions

This section explains the items usually set up by general users.

Table 2.9.3 shows the initial setting items and their purposes.

Each F.P. can be accessed by entering the corresponding function number on Function Programming.

The detailed procedure of the initial setting items will be explained on the following pages.

#### Note:

S-ON: Effective if the service bit has been set on.

FP: Function program setting
TF: Technical function setting



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# Table 2.9.3 (1/6) Feature Specifications

| No. | Item  | Specifications   |
|-----|---|--|
| 1   | Auto dial 1) One-touch dial 2) Two-digit dial | 10 one-touch keys are provided. (OKIFAX 1050) 15 one-touch keys are provided. (OKIFAX 2350) 30 one-touch keys are provided. (OKIFAX 2450) Max. 32 digits for each location number. In addition to an ordinary location number, another alternate loca-tion number can be registered in to each one-touch key. Purposes of this alternate location number: Fax dial A fax number is registered as an alternate location number. When a call to the first location number is not answered, the alternate location number will be automatically dialed. |
|     | 3) Keypad dial 4) Chain dial                  | 40 different codes are provided. (OKIFAX 1050) 64 different codes are provided. (OKIFAX 2350) 99 different codes are provided. (OKIFAX 2450)  * Two- digit location code: 01 to 40 (OKIFAX 1050) 01 to 64 (OKIFAX 2350) 01 to 99 (OKIFAX 2450) Max. 32 digits for each location number.  |
|     |   | With ten-key pad. Max. 40 digits for one operation   |
|     | 5) Mixed dial                                 | The number of dialing digits can be expanded to longer digit num-bers by chaining any number of the above 1), 2) and 3). This func-tion works only with feeder transmissions.  |
|     |   | Type of dialing can be changed from pulse dial to tone dial half-way in dialing process. The changing point is specified by the * key.   |
| 2   | Manual dial                                   | With a telephone handset.  |

| 3 | Receive mode 1) Auto receive mode     | Selectable by key operation.   |
|---|---------------------------------------|--|
|   | 2) Manual receive mode                | Selectable by key operation.   |
|   | 3) Telephone/fax automatic switchover | Selectable by key operation. The fax recognizes a fax call from a verbal call as follows: If the fax detects a call with a CNG signal, it starts an automatic document receive operation. If it detects a call without a CNG signal, it sounds the buzzer to indicate a voice call. Operator can answer the call by lifting the telephone handset. If he or she does not lift the handset within predetermined time (20 sec. or 35 sec.), the fax automatically starts a document receive operation. * FP + 08 (To determine the timer.) |



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# Table 2.9.3 (2/6) Feature Specifications

| No. | Item   | Specifications   |
|-----|--|--|
| 4   | Automatic redial                                   | PTT parameter setting disables or enables this feature, and specifies redial times and redial intervals. * See 2.9.12 for the service bit condition depending on PTT param-eters.  |
| 5   | Last No. redial                                    | REDIAL key is provided. There is no limit on number of repeat attempts.  |
| 6   | Group dial   | <ul> <li>5 dialing groups (OKIFAX 1050) Max. 50 locations.</li> <li>10 dialing groups (OKIFAX 2350) Max. 79 locations.</li> <li>20 dialing groups (OKIFAX 2450) Max. 129 locations.</li> <li>Grouping some one-touch keys and some two-digit auto dial codes to which telephone numbers have been assigned. This group setting makes broadcast operation simple.</li> </ul>  |
| 7   | Telephone directory and location ID (Alpha search) | In addition to fax numbers, an alpha/ numeric name can be assigned to each of one-touch keys and two-digit dial codes, 01 to 40 for OKIFAX 1050, 01 to 64 for OKIFAX 2350 and 01 to 99 for OKIFAX 2450. This name is called a location ID. Any location ID can be searched and displayed on LCD. Then direct dialing to the IDs station can be performed.  There are two methods of searching: (1) Search based on the first character specified. (2) Searching by displaying all registered location IDs one after another in the lexicographical order.  Location ID: Max. 15 characters |

| 8  | Voice request         | A voice request from the transmitter is available only upon completion of the total message transmission.  A voice request from the receiver is available at the end of each page being received. |
|----|-----------------------|---|
| 9  | Local copy            | Printing resolution: Horizontal: 8 PEL/mm<br>Vertical: 7.7 line/mm or variable  |
| 10 | Multiple local copy   | Up to 99 copies.  |
| 11 | Manual loading feeder | One single sheet from the feeder above the first recording paper cas-sette can be copied. (OKIFAX 2350/2450)  Example of sheets: Transparency for an overhead projector 11 Manual loading feeder  |



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# Table 2.9.3 (3/6) Feature Specifications

| No. | Item                                 | Specifications   |
|-----|--------------------------------------|--|
| 12  | Broadcast<br>(Memory transmission)   | Max. 55 (OKIFAX 1050), Max. 84 (OKIFAX 2350) and Max.  134 (OKIFAX 2450) remote locations can be specified by the following means: One-touch keys (with or without a group list). Two-digit auto dial codes. Five-keypad dial number (manual dial locations) The combination of 5 delayed broadcast and one immediate broadcast is possible. When multiple locations are specified for one broadcast (1) The OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450 prints a broadcast entry re-port, if specified in operating sequence.  (2) The OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450 can print a broadcast confirmation report. (FP + 02 To enable or disable this print-out) |
| 13  | Delayed transmission from the memory | The fax can automatically transmit documents at one/five specified times from the memory.  |
| 14  | Polling transmission (To be polled)  | Document(s) placed on the feeder can be collected by a remote station.   |
| 15  | Polling reception                    | The fax can collect documents from one remote station.   |
| 16  | Transmission preparation (Hopper)    | An operator can prepare documents for transmission even while the fax is engaged in message reception. They will be automatically transmitted upon completion of the reception. An operator can also prepare documents for transmission during transmission from memory.   |

| 17 | No toner reception | The fax can temporarily store received messages in memory when toner has run out. The messages are printed when toner has been newly supplied or an operator presses the SELECT FUNCTION key followed by the one-touch key No. 10 under the LCD message MSG. IN MEMORY/REPLACE TONER CART. in the standby mode.  * TF + 11 (To enable or disable this function) |
|----|--------------------|---|
| 18 | Smooth printing    | The documents received in the STD mode can be printed at the FINE resolution by means of generating one line based on the two consecutive original lines and printing it between them.  |



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### Table 2.9.3 (4/6) Feature Specifications

| No. | Item                                | Specifications   |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--|
| 19  | Dual Access<br>(except OKIFAX 1050) | The documents for transmission can be read into the memory even while the fax is engaged in another memory transmission, reception in the ECM or non-ECM mode.  1) Operation of memory transmission while the fax is engaged in a communication (memory TX, memory RX or print mode RX).  2) Copy while the fax is engaged in a communication (memory TX or memory RX). Note: Condition for operation a) Copy is invalid when the machine is already engaged in an operation which is using or could use the printer. 3) Call reception while the fax is engaged in scanning docu-ments for memory transmission when the auto receive mode is in FAX or T/F mode, although TEL mode is not valid. Refer to sub-section 2.9.7 for dual access operation. For the patterns of dual access refer to the following, Dual Access Combination Table. |



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### Table 2.9.3 (5/6) Feature Specifications

### **Dual Access Combination Table (1/2)**

| Machine Status   |              |          | TX from Scanning to |                   |                      | e to               | TX from Memory    |                            |  | FX (non-ECM/ECM) |                                |  |  |                                |
|------------------|--------------|----------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|--|------------------|--------------------------------|--|--|--------------------------------|
| \                |              | Program- | Feed                |                   | Memo                 |                    |                   | 20311 3122                 | ,                                      | P                | aper                           |  | Memory                                   |                                |
| Dua1 A∞          | Dual Access  |          | During<br>Scanning  | After<br>Scanning | Duning<br>Brefeeding | Duning<br>Scanning | During<br>Dialing | During<br>Hand-<br>shaking | During<br>Trans-<br>mitting<br>Message |                  | During<br>Receiving<br>Message | During Hand- shaking (-1st \( \) \( \) | During<br>Hand-<br>shaking<br>(-1st ¢ C) | During<br>Receiving<br>Message |
| Programa         | uing         | \        | ×                   | ×                 | ×                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×                                      | ×                | ×                              | ×                                      | ×  | х                              |
| TX from          | Setting      | ×        | - 1                 | 0                 | 1                    | ١                  | 0                 | 0                          | 0                                      | 0                | 0                              | 0                                      | 0  | 0                              |
| Feeder           | Dàn1 & TX    | ×        | -\                  | -\                | \                    | 1                  | -\                | \                          | -\                                     | 1                | \                              | \                                      | \  | \                              |
| Polling          | Setting      | х        | ×                   | ×                 | ×                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | х                                      | ×                | ×                              | ×                                      | ×  | ×                              |
| RX               | Dia1 & RX    | Х        | \                   | \                 | ×                    | ×                  | _\_               | 1                          | \                                      | \                | Λ.                             | \                                      | \  | \                              |
| Scanning:        | to Memory    | ×        | \                   | 0                 | ١.                   | \                  | 0                 | 0                          | 0                                      | 0                | 0                              | 0                                      | 0  | 0                              |
| TX from I        | Memory       | х        | - /                 | 1                 | ×                    | ×                  | -\                | 1                          | - /                                    | Α.               | - /                            | -\                                     | - /                                      | -\                             |
|                  | RX to Paper  | х        | -\                  | 1                 | ×                    | ×                  | - \               | 1                          | -\                                     | Λ.               | - 1                            | \                                      | \  | -\                             |
| Auto<br>Answer   | RX to Memory | X        | -\                  | \                 | ×                    | ×                  | \                 | \                          | -\                                     | 1                | \                              | -\                                     | \  | \                              |
|                  | ъптх         | ×        | - /                 | 1                 | ×                    | ×                  | - /               | 1                          | - /                                    | 1                | - /                            | \                                      | \  | \                              |
|                  | RX to Paper  | ×        | \                   | -\                | ×                    | ×                  | -\                | \                          | -\                                     | 1                | \                              | -\                                     | -\                                       | -\                             |
| Manual<br>Answer | RX to Memory | ×        | - 1                 | 1                 | ×                    | ×                  | \                 | 1                          | - 1                                    | Α.               | - \                            | Λ.                                     | 1  | -\                             |
|                  | ъптх         | X        | -\                  | \                 | ×                    | ×                  | -\                | - /                        | 1                                      | 1                | Λ.                             | \                                      | \  | \                              |
| Сору             | Page by Page | ×        | \                   | ×                 | \                    | \                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×                                      | ×                | ×                              | ×                                      | ×  | ×                              |
| Manual<br>Mesage | Setting      | х        | х                   | ×                 | х                    | ×                  | х                 | ×                          | ×                                      | \                | Ţ                              | -\                                     | - /                                      | -\                             |
| Print            | Print        | х        | ×                   | ×                 | Х                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | Х                                      | 1                | -\                             | -\                                     | \  | \                              |
| Manual<br>Report | Setting      | ×        | ×                   | ×                 | ×                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×                                      | \                | - /                            | \                                      | \  | -\                             |
| Print            | Print        | ×        | ×                   | ×                 | ×                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×                                      | -\               | \                              | \                                      | \  | \                              |

Note: ○: Available ×: Not available \:\ Not possible



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### Table 2.9.3 (6/6) Feature Specifications

### **Dual Access Combination Table (1/2)**

|                  | Machine Status |          | TX from Scanning to |                   |                      |                    | TX from Memory    |                            |        | RX (non-ECM/ECM)           |                                |  |                                       |                                |
|------------------|----------------|----------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|--------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| \                |                | Program- | Feed                |                   | Memo                 |                    | 122               | 20311 31223                | ,      | P                          | per                            |  | Memory                                |                                |
| Dua1 A∞          | Dual Access    |          | During<br>Scanning  | After<br>Scanning | Duning<br>Brefeeding | Duzing<br>Scanning | During<br>Dialing | Duning<br>Hand-<br>staking | Trans- | During<br>Hand-<br>shaking | During<br>Receiving<br>Message | During Hand- staking (-1st \( \) \( \) | During Hand- shaking (-1st \( \pri \) | During<br>Receiving<br>Message |
| Programa         | uing           | \        | ×                   | ×                 | ×                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×      | ×                          | ×                              | ×                                      | ×                                     | ×                              |
| TX from          | Setting        | ×        | 1                   | 0                 | ١                    | \                  | 0                 | 0                          | 0      | 0                          | 0                              | 0                                      | 0                                     | 0                              |
| Feeder           | Dail & TX      | ×        | 1                   | 1                 | ١                    | 1                  | -\                | ١                          | 1      | ١                          | \                              | \                                      | \                                     | \                              |
| Potting          | Setting        | ×        | ×                   | ×                 | ×                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×      | ×                          | ×                              | ×                                      | ×                                     | ×                              |
| RX               | Dia1 & RX      | ×        | Α.                  | Λ.                | ×                    | ×                  | - \               | -/                         | \      | \                          | Α.                             | \                                      | \                                     | \                              |
| Scannaing:       | to Memory      | ×        | 1                   | 0                 | ١.                   | ١                  | 0                 | 0                          | 0      | 0                          | 0                              | 0                                      | 0                                     | 0                              |
| TX from 1        | Memory         | ×        | - 1                 | 1                 | ×                    | ×                  | -\                | 1                          | - 1    | Λ.                         | - /                            | 1                                      | 1                                     | ١                              |
|                  | RX to Paper    | ×        | ١                   | 1                 | ×                    | ×                  | - /               | 1                          | ١      | ١                          | - /                            | \                                      | \                                     | \                              |
| Auto<br>Answer   | RX to Memory   | ×        | 1                   | \                 | ×                    | ×                  | -\                | \                          | \      | 1                          | -\                             | -\                                     | \                                     | \                              |
|                  | ъптх           | ×        | - 1                 | 1                 | ×                    | ×                  | -\                | 1                          | 1      | 1                          | - \                            | 1                                      | 1                                     | 1                              |
|                  | RX to Paper    | х        | 1                   | 1                 | ×                    | ×                  | \                 | 1                          | 1      | ١                          | \                              | 1                                      | \                                     | \                              |
| Manual<br>Answer | RX to Memory   | ×        | ١                   | ١                 | ×                    | ×                  | -\                | 1                          | 1      | 1                          | -\                             | ١                                      | ١                                     | ١                              |
|                  | њитх           | ×        | ١                   | ١                 | ×                    | ×                  | - \               | 1                          | 1      | 1                          | -\                             | 1                                      | 1                                     | 1                              |
| Сору             | Page by Page   | ×        | \                   | ×                 | \                    | \                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×      | ×                          | ×                              | ×                                      | ×                                     | ×                              |
| Manual<br>Mesage | Setting        | ×        | ×                   | ×                 | ×                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×      | \                          | - 1                            | \                                      | \                                     | \                              |
| Print            | Print          | ×        | ×                   | ×                 | Х                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×      | 1                          | -\                             | \                                      | \                                     | \                              |
| Manual<br>Report | Setting        | ×        | ×                   | ×                 | Х                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×      | ١                          | - \                            | ١                                      | ١                                     | \                              |
| Print            | Print          | ×        | ×                   | ×                 | ×                    | ×                  | ×                 | ×                          | ×      | 1                          | ١.                             | ١                                      | \                                     | ١                              |

*Note:*  $\bigcirc$ : Available  $\times$ : Not available  $\setminus$ : Not possible

| No. | Item             | Specifications           |
|-----|------------------|--------------------------|
| 20  | Clock adjustment | Date and time adjustment |

| 21 | System data program  | <ul> <li>(a) Registration of TSI/CSI except for BEL, SUI and AUT</li> <li>(b) Registration of sender ID.</li> <li>(c) Registration of telephone number for the call-back message.</li> </ul>                                       |
|----|----------------------|--|
| 22 | Programming password | To allow the operator (in this case, the person who wishes to as-sign a password to mail-box) to assign a 4-digit password code to one of 8 (OKIFAX 1050/2350) or 16 (OKIFAX 2450) mail-box memory segments in the message memory. |

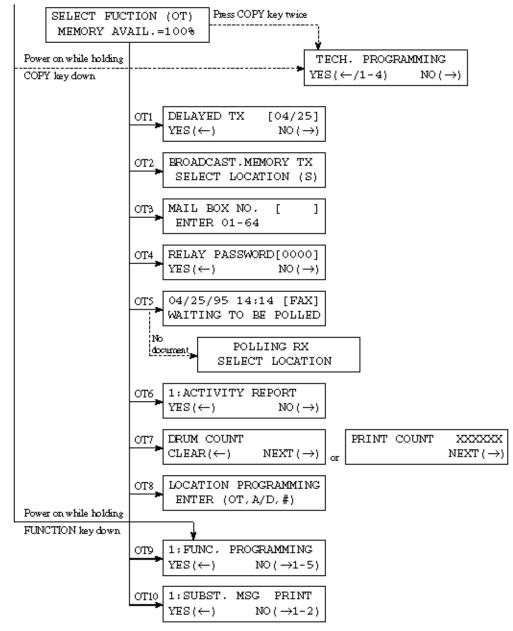


**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### **Users Initial Settings**

One Touch Key Operations

POWER ON





**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# Table 2.9.4 (1/3) One-touch key Program Settings

| F+O<br>T<br>No. | Item                                  | Specifications   |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1               | Delayed transmission (Tx)             | This function enters a message transmission time(s) and location(s) for execution at a specified time.   |
| 2               | Broadcast/memory transmission         | To make a one-time selection of the memory transmis-sion mode.  Max. 55 (OKIFAX 1050), Max. 84 (OKIFAX 2350) and Max. 134 (OKIFAX 2450) remote locations can be specified by the following means: One-touch key (with of without a group list) Two-digit auto dial code Keypad dial number  When multiple locations are specified for one broad-cast, The fax can print a broadcast confirmation report, if specified in operating sequence. |
| 3               | Confidential transmission             | To program the mail box number 01 to 64. Available remote station's mail box numbers:  OKIFAX 2400/2600: 01 to 40  OKIFAX 1000: 01 to 16  OKIFAX 2300/900/1000: 01 to 16  OKIFAX 1050/OKIFAX 2350: 01 to 08  OKIFAX 2450: 01 to 16   |
| 4               | Relay broadcast initiate transmission | This function automatically originates a message call via relay key station (which must be equipped with OKIFAX 2600) up to 99 locations. To program relay password. To enable or disable the relay report. Display when one location is programmed to auto dial No. 40 for OKIFAX 1050 or to auto dial No. 64 for OKIFAX 2350 or to auto dial No. 99 for OKIFAX 2450.   |

| 5 | Polling transmission/reception | Polling TX: The documents placed on the feeder can be collected by a remote station. Polling RX: The fax can collect documents from one remote station.  |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| 6 | Report printing                | 1. Activity report 2. Broadcast message confirmation report (Multi location) 3. Phone directory report 4. Configuration report 5. Protocol dump report * TF + 01 (Sets to on Service bit) 6. Log. report |



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# Table 2.9.4 (2/3) One-touch key Program Settings

| F+O<br>T<br>No. | Item                               | Specifications  |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|---|
| 7               | Counter display (clear)            | * TF + 01 (Sets to on Service bit) The operation for displaying and clearing the print counters in five ways are as follows:  1. Drum counter * Drum counter indicates only when reaching a life of a drum.  2. Toner counter * TF + 01 (Sets to on Service bit)  3. Drum (total) continue * TF + 01 (Sets to on Service bit) 4. Print counter * User can read no. of counter in LCD but can not clear.  5. Scan counter * User can read no. of counter in LCD but can not clear. |
| 8               | Location program  1. One-touch key | One-touch keys allow registering: (1) Telephone number (numeral, -, P and space) in 32 digits. (2) Alternate fax telephone number in 32 digits. (additional registration) (3) ID for the telephone directory function in 15 characters (alphabetic, numeric and symbolic). (One ID can be registered for one key). (4) 10 one-touch keys are provided (OKIFAX 1050). 15 one-touch keys are provided (OKIFAX 2350). 30 one-touch keys are provided (OKIFAX 2450).                  |
|                 | 2. Two-digit auto dial program     | Auto-dial No. 01 to 40 for OKIFAX 1050, No. 01 to 64 for OKIFAX 2350 and No. 01 to 99 for OKIFAX 2450 allows registering telephone number in 32 dig-its (numeral, -, P and space) and ID for the telephone directory function 15 characters (alphabetic, numeric and symbolic).   |
|                 | 3. Group setting                   | Grouping some one-touch keys and some two-digit auto dial codes to which telephone numbers have been assigned. This group setting makes broadcast operation simple.   |
|                 |                                    | Five dialing groups for OKIFAX 1050, 10 dialing groups for OKIFAX 2350 and 20 dialing groups for OKIFAX 2450.   |

Page: 63



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# Table 2.9.4 (3/3) One-touch key Program Settings

| F+O | Item | Specifications |  |
|-----|------|----------------|--|
| No. |      |                |  |

| 9 | User's programs 1. Function program | Function program 01: MCF (SINGLE-LOC.) 02: MCF (MULTI-LOC.) 03: SENDER ID 04: MONITOR VOLUME 05: REMOTE DIAGNOSIS 06: CLOSED NETWORK 07: TX MODE DEFAULT 08: T/F TIMER PRG. 09: BUZZER VOLUME 10: 1'ST PAPER SIZE 11: 2'ND PAPER SIZE 12: SELECT LANGUAGE 13: SOFT RINGER SET 14: REMOTE RECEIVE (1050/2350 only) 15: RING RESPONSE 16: MEM/FEEDER SW 17: ONE TOUCH PARAM. Refer to Table 2.9.4 Function Program for Specification of the function programs No. 01 through 17. |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|
|   | 2. Dial parameters                  | Dial parameters  1. NATIONAL CODE  2. REDIAL TRIES  3. REDIAL INTERVAL  4. DIAL TONE DETECT  5. BUSY TONE DETECT  6. MF (TONE)/DP (PULSE)  7. PULSE DIAL RATE  8. PULSE MAKE RATIO  9. PULSE DIAL TYPE  10. MF(TONE) DURATION  11. PBX LINE  12. FLASH/EARTH/NORMAL  13. AUTO START  14. ACCESS DIGIT Refer to Table 2.9.5.03 for specification of dial parameter settings.  |
|   | 3. Clock adjustment                 | Date and time adjustment.  |
|   | System data program                 | (1) TSI/CSI Registration of TSI/CSI/CIG (numbers, + and space) in 20 digits. TSI:Transmitting Subscriber Identification CSI: Called Subscriber Identification CIG: Calling Subscriber Identification (2) SENDER ID Registration of sender ID (alphabetic, numeric and symbolic) in 32 digits. (3) CALL BACK NO. Registration of telephone number for cover let-ter (alphabetic, numeric and symbolic) in 20 digits.  |
|   | 5. Password program                 | To allow the operator (in this case, a person who wishes to assign a password to mail box) to assign a 4-digit password code to one of 8 for OKIFAX 1050, 8 for OKIFAX 2350 and 16 for OKIFAX 2450 mail-box memory segments in the message memory.   |

| 3. Fassword Togram | To allow the operator (in this case, a person who wishes to assign a password to mail box) to assign a 4-digit password code to one of 8 for OKIFAX 1050, 8 for OKIFAX 2350 and 16 for OKIFAX 2450 mail-box memory segments in the message memory. |
|--------------------|--|
|--------------------|--|



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# **Table 2.9.4 User Function Program Settings**

# **Function Program**

| F+O<br>T<br>No. | Item   | Specifications   | Default |
|-----------------|--|--|---------|
| 01              | Message confirmation report (Single location)    | Enables or disables the automatic message confirmation report printing after a single location call.  ON: Prints the MCF report.  OFF: Disables this function.   | OFF     |
| 02              | Message confirmation report (Multiple locations) | Enables of disables the automatic message confirmation report printing after a multiple polling or broadcast.  ON: Prints the MCF report.  OFF: Disables this function.  | ON      |
| 03              | Sender ID  | The fax can transmit programmed alphanumeric message, such as company's name consisting of up to 32 characters. Enables or disables the sender ID function. * (Outside only)  **Note:* The user programming of this information is an FCC requirement.  ON: Enable OFF: Disables | ON      |
| 04              | Line monitor volume                              | Controls the volume of the phone line monitor.  OFF/Low/High selectable.   | LOW     |

| 05 | Remote diagnosis                              | Enables or disables the remote diagnosis function. The machine can allow remote diagnosis from a service center that is capable.   | OFF                             |
|----|---|--|---------------------------------|
|    |   | ON: Enables<br>OFF: Disables   |                                 |
| 06 | Closed network                                | The fax compares the last four digits of TSI/CSI received from remote station with fax numbers registered locally for one-touch dial and two-digits autodial. If unmatched, the communication will be automatically disconnected.  OFF/RX only/TX and RX selectable. | OFF                             |
|    |   | * Prevention of direct mail or wrong number calls.   |                                 |
|    |   | (Reference) TSI: Transmitting subscriber identification CSI: Called subscriber identification  |                                 |
| 07 | TX mode default                               | Selects automatically the mode set up when a 07 TX mode default docu-ment is loaded on the feeder.  The following combinations are   | STD/<br>NORMAL and<br>Non-Photo |
|    |   | Selectable.  STD/NORMAL→STD/DARK→STD/LIGHT→ FINE/NORMAL→FINE/DARK→FINE/LIGHT→ EX.FINE/NORMAL→EX.FINE/DARK→ EX.FINE/LIGHT→PHOTO/NORMAL→ FHOTO/DARK→PHOTO/LIGHT→ STD/NORMAL→···  |                                 |
| 80 | Telephone/fax<br>automatic switchover<br>time | Specifies the time for which the fax alerts an operator on reception of a call in the telephone/fax automatic switchover mode.  20 sec./35 sec. selectable Refer to TEL/FAX and TAD receive mode options   | 35 sec.                         |
| 09 | Buzzer volume                                 | Selects the sound volume of each of the key touchtone, end of communication buzzer, voice request buzzer and off-hook alarm from high, low and middle levels.  | MID.                            |

| 10 | 1'st cassette paper size               | Selects A4, LETTER or LEGAL for this function. The operator must select the preferable paper size as the machine cannot detect the paper size automatically.  | LETTER    |
|----|--|---|-----------|
| 11 | 2'nd cassette paper<br>size (option)   | Selects A4, LETTER or LEGAL for this function. The operator must select the preferable paper size as the machine cannot detect the paper size automatically. (for OKIFAX 2350/2450)   | LETTER    |
| 12 | Select language                        | A choice of 2 languages for LCD and print message are available. ENGLISH and one other language   | ENGLI     |
| 13 | Software ringer set                    | Instead of a ringer circuit, software controls the audible indication of an incoming call through the built in speaker.  To enable (ON) or disable (OFF) a software generated ring sound to indicate arrival of an incoming call.                                 | ON<br>OFF |
| 14 | Remote receive<br>(except OKIFAX 2450) | This function is used to transfer the call received by external telephone (connected to fax) by entering preset two-digits. (for OKIFAX 1050/2350 only) The following combinations are selectable. OFF>11>22>33>44>55>66>77>88>99 Selects the ring response time. |           |
| 15 | Ring response time                     | 1 ring/5/10/15/20 sec.  | 1 ring    |
| 16 | Memory and feeder selection            | Switches the transmission mode between the memory and feeder.  MEM. TX/FEEDER TX  • Defaults:  OKIFAX 1050/2350 FEEDER TX  OKIFAX 2450 MEM. TX  |           |
| 17 | One-touch key parameters               | To assign the following features to each one-touch key.  1) Echo protection (ON/OFF)  | OFF       |



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### 2.9.5 User's Functions Example

2.9.5.01 Function Program

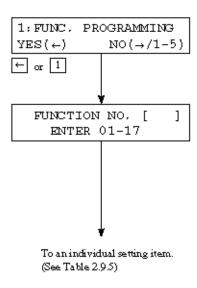
#### Operations:

To bring the LCD up to the desired message, press SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 9 in the standby mode. (In case of no message in memory)

Press the ← key.

Enter two-digit function number, then the display will show the set item corresponding to the number entered. If you want to set up all or several items starting with 01, then enter 01

#### The display shows:



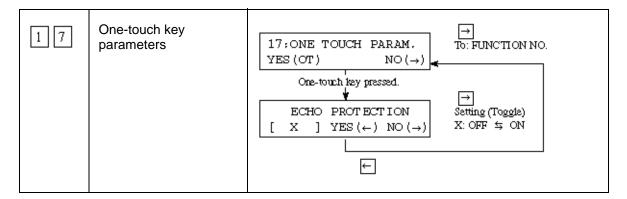


**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

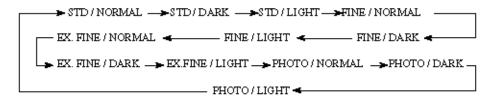
### **Table 2.9.5 User's Functions**

| Tap No. | Name of Function                                 | The Display Shows                         |   |
|---------|--|---|---|
| 0 1     | Message confirmation report (Single location)    | 01:MCF(SINGLE-LOC.)<br>[ X ] YES(←) NO(→) | → Setting (Toggle) X: OFF ≒ ON            |
| 0 2     | Message confirmation report (Multiple locations) | 02:MCF (MULTI-LOC.)<br>[ X ] YES(←) NO(→) | → Setting (Toggle) X: OFF ≒ ON            |
| 03      | Sender ID  | 03:SENDER ID<br>[ X ] YES(←) NO(→)        | → Setting (Toggle) X: OFF ≒ ON            |
| 0 4     | Line monitor volume                              | 04:MONITOR VOLUME<br>[ X ] YES(←) NO(→)   | → Satting X: OFF → LOW → HIGH             |
| 0 5     | Remote diagnosis                                 | 05:REMOTE DIAG.<br>[ X ] YES(←) NO(→)     | → Setting (Toggle) X: OFF ≒ ON            |
| 0 6     | Closed network                                   | 06:CLOSED NETWORK<br>[ X ] YES(←) NO(→)   | → Setting X: T/R → RX → OFF               |
| 07      | TX mode default                                  | 07:TX MODE DEFAULT YES (←) NO (→)         | ORIGINAL                                  |
| 08      | Telephone/fax<br>automatic switchover<br>timer   | 08:T/F TIMER PROG.<br>[ X ] YES(←) NO(→)  | →<br>Satting (Toggla)<br>X: 20SEC ≒ 35SEC |

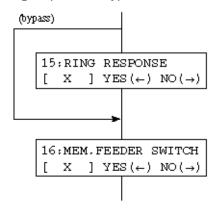
| 09  | Buzzer volume               | O9: BUZZER VOLUME  [ X ] YES (←) NO (→)  Setting (Toggle)  X: MID → HIGH → LOW                      |
|-----|-----------------------------|---|
| 10  | 1'st cassette paper size    | 10:1'ST PAPER SIZE Setting (Toggle)  [ X ] YES (←) NO (→)  X: A4 → LET. → LEGAL                     |
| 11  | 2'nd cassette paper<br>size | 11:2'ND PAPER SIZE   Setting (Toggle)   X: A4 → LET. → LEGAL  |
| 1 2 | Select language             | $ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$  |
| 1 3 | Software ringer set         | 13:SOFT RINGER SET Satting (Toggla)  [ X ] YES (←) NO (→)  X: OFF ≒ ON                              |
| 1 4 | Remote receive              | 14: REMOTE RECEIVE Satting  [ X ] YES (←) NO (→)  OFF →11 →22 →33 →44 →55 →77 →88 →99 —             |
| 1 5 | Ring response time          | DOTE 2:  15:RING RESPONSE Setting  [ X ] YES (←) NO (→)  X: IRING → OSSEC → 10SEC → 15SEC — 20SEC ← |
| 16  | Memory and feeder selection | 16:MEM/FEEDER SWITCH Satting [ X ] YES (←) NO (→) X: MEM. ≒ FEED.                                   |



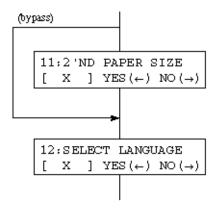
**Note1:** RESOLUTION & ORIGINAL of Tx mode default setting can be selected by using  $\square$  key.



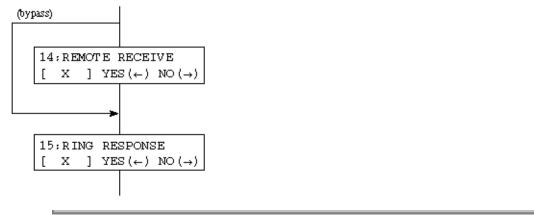
**Note2:** When the service bit is set to "off" and the correspond bit of XPARA of national code is set to "off", Ring response is bypassed as follows:



**Note3:** When 2'nd tray is not mounted on OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450, 2'nd paper size is bypassed as follows:



Note2: For OKIFAX 2450, Remote Receive is bypassed as follows:





**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

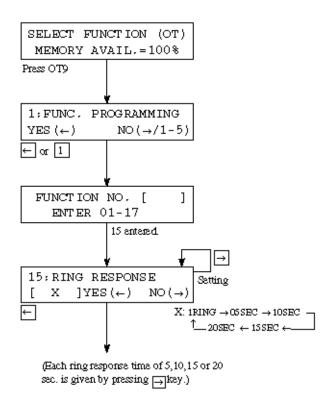
### 2.9.5.02 Ring response time

Before specifying the ring response time, set the service bit on following the operations shown in **Section** 2.9.3.01 (Service Bit Setting).

### Operations:

- To bring the LCD up to the desired message, press SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 9 in the standby mode. (In case of no message in memory)
- Press the key enter using the ten-key pad.
- Enter 15 using the ten-key pad.
- Press the key until the setting you want is displayed, then press the key.

### The display shows:

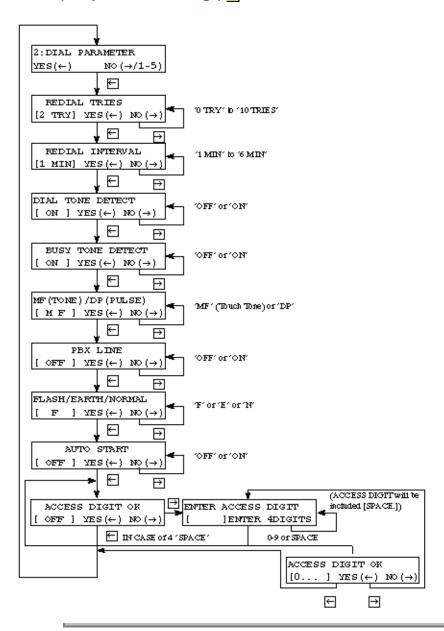




**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### 2.9.5.03 Dial parameters (In case the service bit is "OFF".)

To get the "DIAL PARAMETER" message on the display, perform the same operation as listed in Section 2.9.12. (Dial parameters settings).





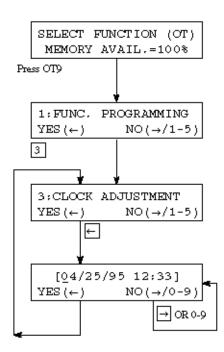
**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### 2.9.6 Clock Adjustment

#### **Operations:**

- To set the date and time, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 9 in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Enter 3 using the ten-key pad.
- Press the Ekey.
- Enter date and time by using the ten-key pad (0 to 9 keys).

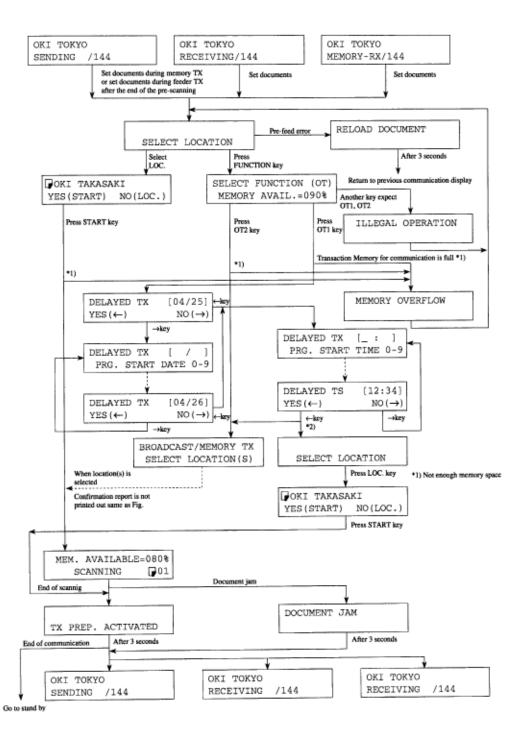
#### The display shows:





**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### 2.9.7 Dual Access Operation (for OKIFAX 2350/2450)





### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

### 2.9.8 System Data Programming

TSI/CSI (Default: Blank)

Registration of sender ID (Default: Blank)

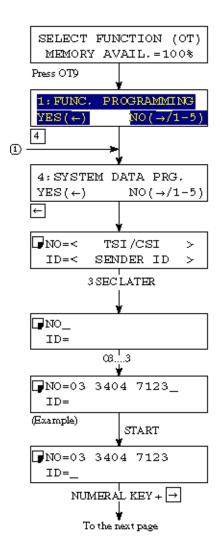
Registration of telephone number for the call-back message (Default: Blank)

### Operations:

 To program system ID data, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 9 in the standby mode.
 (If no message is in memory)

- Enter 4 using the ten-key pad.

## The display shows:

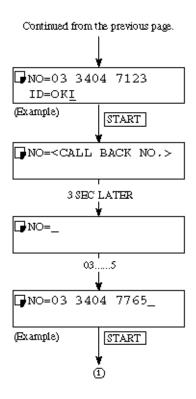


*Note:* Use the UNIQUE key to input special symbols.

# Operations:

- Press the START key.
- Press the START key.

## The display shows:





### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

### 2.9.9 One-Touch Key Programming

2.9.9.01 Purpose

One-touch keys No. 01 through 10 (OKIFAX 1050), No. 01 through 15 (OKIFAX 2350) or No. 01 through 30 (OKIFAX 2450) allow registration: (Default: Blank)

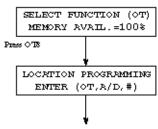
Telephone number (numeral, -, P (Dial Pause), and space) in 32 digits. Alternate telephone number in 32 digits (additional registration) ID for the telephone directory function in 15 characters (alphabets, numeral, and symbols)

2.9.9.02 Procedure

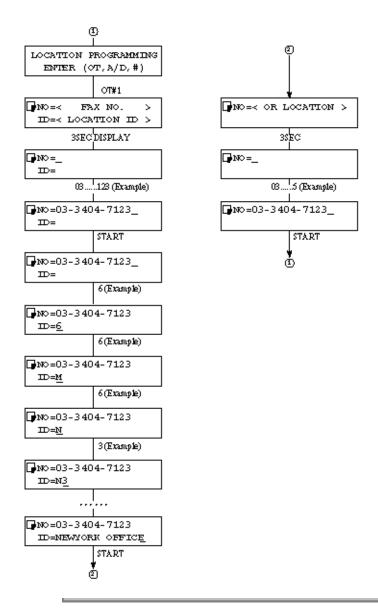
#### **Operations:**

- To program one-touch keys, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 8 in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Enter one-touch key No. 1 (Example).

#### The display shows:



To one-touch key programming.



Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

### 2.9.10 Two-digit Auto Dial Programming

#### 2.9.10.01 Purpose

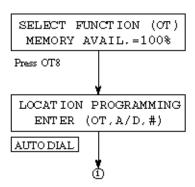
Auto dial No. 01 through 40 (OKIFAX 1050), No. 01 through 64 (OKIFAX 2350) or No. 01 through 99 (OKIFAX 2450) allow registering a telephone number in 32 digits (numeral, -, P (Dial Pause), and space) and ID for the telephone directory function in 15 characters (alphabets, numeral, and symbols). (Default: Blank)

#### 2.9.10.02 Procedure

#### Operations:

- To program auto dial locations, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 8 in the standby mode.
   (If no message is in memory)
- Enter the AUTO DIAL key.

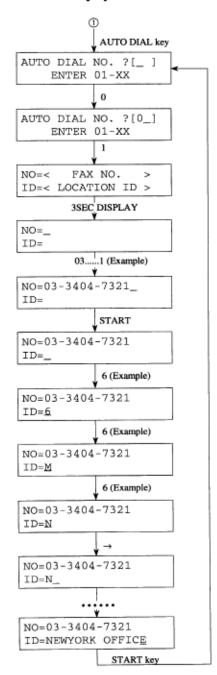
#### The display shows:



To AUTO DIAL key programming.

#### Operations:

#### The display shows:



Note;

XX: Location No. 01 to No. 40 for OKIFAX 1050. Location No. 01 to No. 64 for OKIFAX 2350. Location No. 01 to No. 99 for OKIFAX 2450.



#### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

#### 2.9.11 Group setting

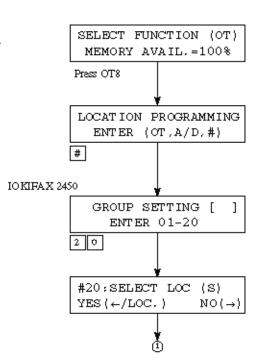
Grouping some one-touch keys and some two-digit auto dial codes to which telephone numbers have been assigned. This group setting makes multiple polling reception and broadcast operation simple.

OKIFAX 1050: 5 dialing groups OKIFAX 2350: 10 dialing groups OKIFAX 2450: 20 dialing groups

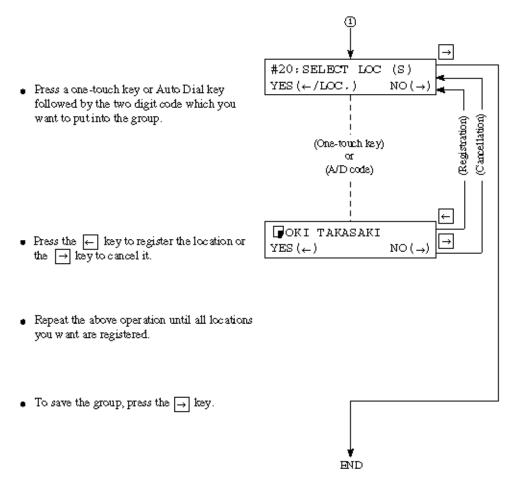
#### Operations:

### The display shows:

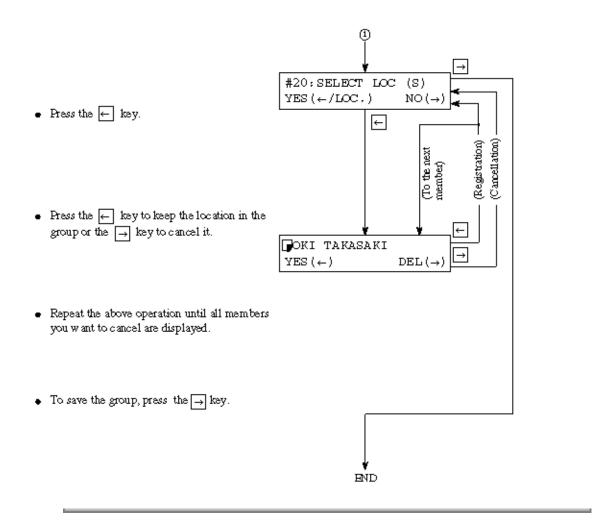
- To program a group of numbers, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 8 in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Enter # using the ten-key pad.
- Enter 2 digits using the ten-key pad.



Case 1: Making a group



Case 2: Canceling member(s) from a group





### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

### 2.9.12 Dial Parameters Settings

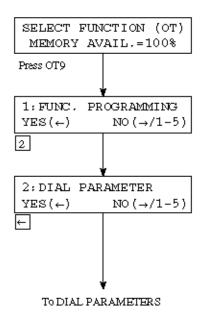
#### 2.9.12.01 Procedure

The following shows the case in which the service bit is on.

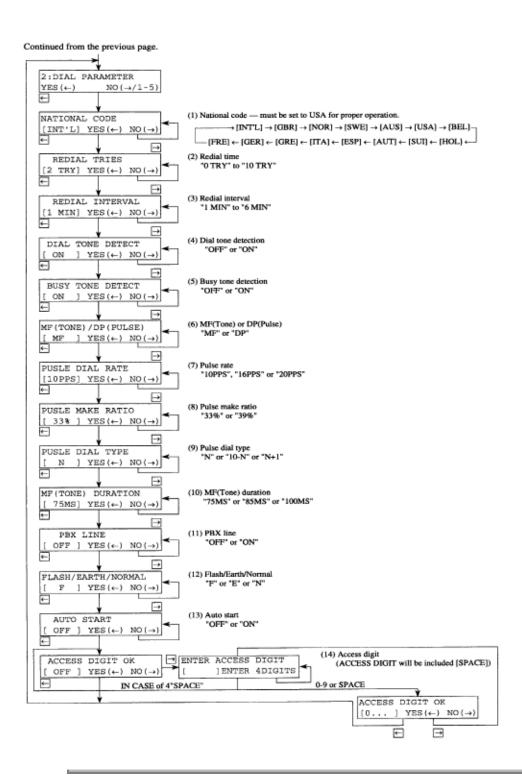
### Operations:

- To bring the LCD up to the desired message, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 9 in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Enter 2 using the ten-key pad.
- Press the ← key.

### The display shows:



### The display shows:



Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

## 2.9.12.02 Procedure

| No. | PTT Parameter Bems | Setting Selection              | 1   | 2   | 3     | 4     | 5     | 6     | 7     | 8    | 9     | 10    | 11   | 12       | (13)    |
|-----|--------------------|--------------------------------|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|------|----------|---------|
|     |                    |                                | ODA | ATT | E-INT | E-GER | E-ITA | E-FRA | O-INT | L-AB | L-FTZ | L-ITA | L-AG | Reserved | Factory |
| 1   | NATIONAL CODE      | INTL GER NORSWE AUS US A BEL   | USA | USA | GBR   | GER   | GBR   | FRE   | AUS   | GBR  | GER   | GBR   | USA  | USA      | DAL     |
|     |                    | HOL SUI AUT ESPITA GRE GER FRE |     |     |       |       |       |       |       |      |       |       |      |          |         |
| 2   | REDIAL TRIES       | 0 - 10 TRIES                   | 3   | 5   | 2     | 10    | 2     | 5     | 2     | 2    | 10    | 2     | 3    | 3        | 2       |
| 3   | REDIAL INTERVAL    | 1-6 min.                       | 3   | 3   | 3     | 1     | 3     | 6     | 3     | 3    | 1     | 3     | 3    | 3        | 3       |
| 4   | DIAL TONE DETECT   | ON/OFF                         | OFF | ON  | ON    | ON    | ON    | ON    | ON    | ON   | ON    | ON    | OFF  | OFF      | ON      |
| 5   | BUSYTONEDETECT     | ON/OFF                         | ON  | ON  | ON    | ОМ    | ON    | ON    | ON    | ON   | ON    | ON    | ON   | ୀ ।      | OFF     |
| 6   | MRDP               | DP/MF                          | MF  | MF  | MF    | DP    | MF    | MF    | MF    | MF   | DP    | MF    | MF   | DP       | MF      |
| 7   | PULSERATE          | 10 PPS / 16 PPS / 20 PPS       | 10  | 10  | 10    | 10    | 10    | 10    | 10    | 10   | 10    | 10    | 10   | 20       | 10      |
| 8   | PULSEMAKERATIO     | 33 % / 39 %                    | 39% | 39% | 33%   | 39%   | 33%   | 33%   | 39%   | 39%  | 39%   | 33%   | 39%  | 33%      | 39%     |
| 9   | PULSEDIAL TYPE     | N / 10 - N / N + 1             | N   | N   | N     | И     | N     | N     | И     | N    | И     | N     | N    | И        | N       |
| 10  | MEDURATION         | 75 ms / 85 ms / 100 ms         | 100 | 100 | 85    | 85    | 85    | 75    | 85    | 85   | 85    | 85    | 100  | 100      | 100     |
| 11  | PBXLINE            | ON/OFF                         | OFF | OFF | OFF   | OFF   | OFF   | OFF   | OFF   | OFF  | OFF   | OFF   | OFF  | OFF      | ON      |
| 12  | PBXTYPE            | NORMAL/FLASH/EARTH             | И   | N   | И     | EARTH | N     | FLASH | И     | N    | EARTH | N     | N    | И        | И       |
| 13  | AUTOSTART          | ON / OFF                       | ON  | ON  | OFF   | ON    | OFF   | OFF   | ON    | OFF  | ON    | OFF   | ON   | ON       | ON      |
| 14  | ACCESS DIGIT       | OFF / (max. 4 digits)          | OFF | OFF | OFF   | 0     | OFF   | OFF   | OFF   | OFF  | 0     | OFF   | OFF  | OFF      | OFF     |

# **Table 2.9.11 Default Settings of Dial Parameters**



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

# **Table 2.9.6 Dial Parameters Settings**

| No. | Item                    | Specifications   |
|-----|-------------------------|--|
| 01  | National code           | Selecting the following parameters: INT'L, GRB, NOR, SWE, AUS, USA, BEL, HOL, SUI, AUT, ESP, ITA, GRE, GER, FRE Note: Must be set to USA for proper machine operation. |
| 02  | Redial tries            | 0 to 10 tries.   |
| 03  | Redial interval         | 1 to 6 minutes (one-minute steps)  |
| 04  | Dial tone detect        | Selects the dial tone detection. ON/OFF selectable. ON: Enable OFF: Disable  |
| 05  | Busy tone detect        | Selects the busy tone detection. ON/OFF selectable. ON: Enable OFF: Disable  |
| 06  | MF (TONE) or DP (Pulse) | Selects dialing by multi-frequency or dial pulse.  |
| 07  | Pulse dial rate         | Selects the dialing pulse rates for the line. 10 pps/16 pps/20 pps selectable.   |
| 08  | Pulse make ratio        | Selects pulse dial rate. 33%/39%   |
| 09  | Pulse dial type         | Selects pulse dial type. Normal(N)/10-N/N+1  |
| 10  | MF (Tone) duration      | Selects MF (Tone) duration.<br>75/85/100 ms selectable.  |
| 11  | PBX line                | Selects PBX line. ON/OFF selectable.   |

| 12 | Flash/Earth/Normal | Selects the PBX type to meet the exchange requirements. NORMAL/EARTH/FLASH selectable. (PBX line origination types)   |
|----|--------------------|---|
| 13 | Auto start         | Enables or disables the function of dialing without pressing the START key in one-touch dial and 2-digit auto dial modes.  ON: Enable  OFF: Disable   |
| 14 | Access digit       | Prefix dialing digits with which PBX Connects the fax to the public line.  OFF/digit(s) selectable.  Note: When a preprogrammed access digit is recognized in the dialing sequence, the machine will automatically insert a pause. (The access code is not dialed automatically.) |



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

The display shows:

#### 2.9.13 Programming Mail Box Password

Operations:

To allow the operator (in this case, a person who wishes to assign a password to mail-box) to assign a 4-digit password to one of 8 for OKIFAX 1050, 8 for OKIFAX 2350, 16 for OKIFAX 2450 mail-box memory segments in the message memory.

# To program a mailbox password, 1: FUNC. PROGRAMMIN press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 9 in $YES(\leftarrow)$ $NO(\rightarrow/1-5)$ the standby mode. (If no message is in memory) 5: MAIL PASSWORD PRG. Enter 5 using the ten-key pad. $YES(\leftarrow)$ $NO(\rightarrow/1-5)$ Press the ← key. In case of OKIFAX 2450 MAIL BOX NO. [ ENTER 01-16 16 (Example) Enter 2 digits (16) using the ten-key pad. MAIL BOX NO. [16] ENTER 01-16 PRG. PASSWORD [\_ ENTER 4 DIGITS 1111 (Example) Enter 4 digits using the ten-key pad. PRG. PASSWORD [1111] $YES(\leftarrow)$ $NO(\rightarrow)$ PRG. PASSWORD [XXXX] ENTER 4 DIGITS SPACE CLOSE MAIL BOX? $YES(\leftarrow)$ $MO(\rightarrow)$

Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



#### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

### 2.9.14 Memory Operations

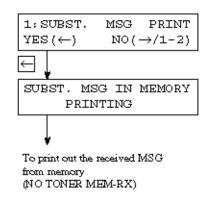
2.9.14.01 SUBST. MSG PRINT

This function will force printing of messages received into memory due to a low toner condition. *Note:* Print quality may be poor under these circumstances.

#### Operations:

- To use the substitute MSG.Print function, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 10 in the standby mode.
   (If no message is in memory)
- Press the ← key.

### The display shows:





**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

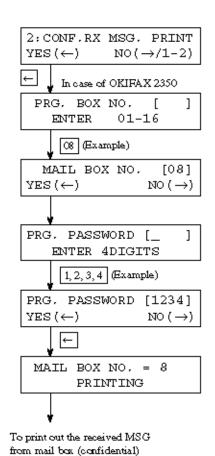
#### 2.9.14.02 CONF. RX MSG. PRINT

Messages received in a personal box can be printed out only if the password entered by the operator matches that registered for the box.

#### Operations:

- To print a confidential message from a mailbox, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 10 in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Enter 6 using the ten-key pad, and then press the ← key.
- Enter 2 digits (08) using the ten-key pad.
   OKIFAX 1050/2350: 1-8
   OKIFAX 2450 : 01-16
- Enter 4 digits using the ten-key pad.
- Press the ← key.

### The display shows:





#### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

#### 2.9.15 Off-line Tests

#### 2.9.15.01 Purpose

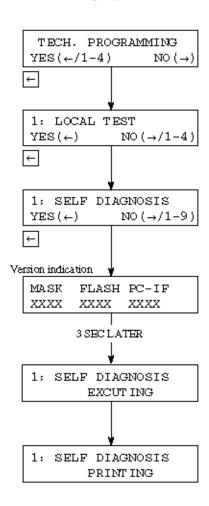
Activate self-diagnosis which includes: Print test CPU-ROM version printing CPU-RAM check FLASH version printing LANGUAGE version printing DEFAULT version printing RAM check RAM check (memory board: optional) PC-I/F version printing (optional)

#### 2.9.15.02 Procedure

#### Operations:

- To perform offline testing, press the SELECTFUNCTION key once and the COPY key twice in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Press the ← key.
- Press the ← key.
- Press the ← key for checking and test printing.
   (An example of printed data is shown in Figure 2.9.4)

### The display shows:



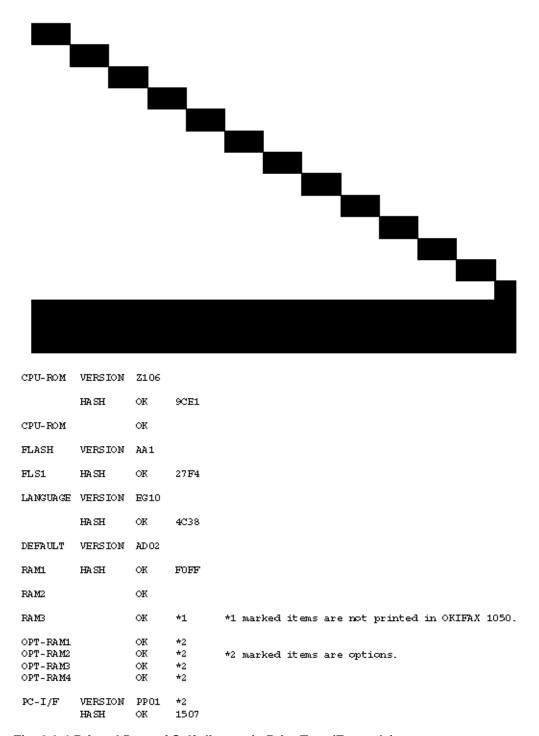


Fig. 2.9.4 Printed Data of Self-diagnosis Print Test (Example)

Page: 82



## Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

### **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

#### 2.9.16 On-line Tests

2.9.16.01 Transmission

Load documents

Make sure that

The loaded documents are fed in automatically. The STD and NORMAL lamps light. The display shows SELECT LOCATION.

Dial the telephone number of the remote machine by the ten-key pad.

Make sure that the telephone number of the remote machine is shown on the display.

Press the START button.

Typical message transmission flow is described in Figure 2.9.5.

Page: 83



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

### 2.9.16.02 Reception

Use another machine for dialing.

Make sure that

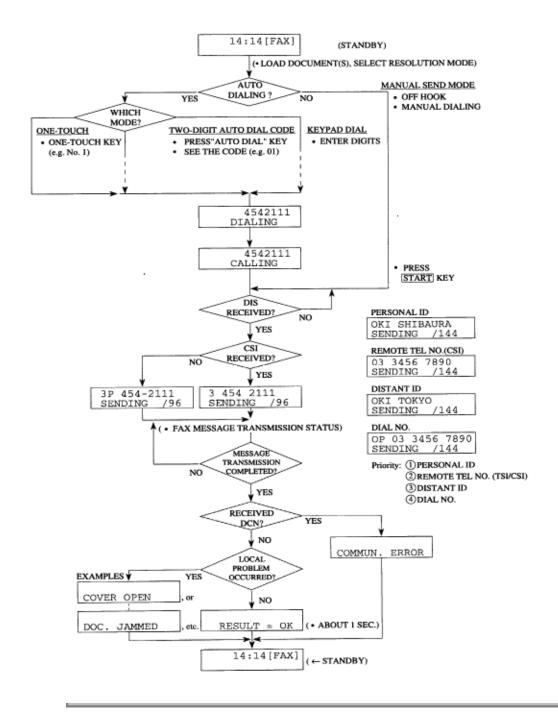
The display shows AUTO REC. START. The message is automatically received.

Typical message reception flow is described in Figure 2.9.6.



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

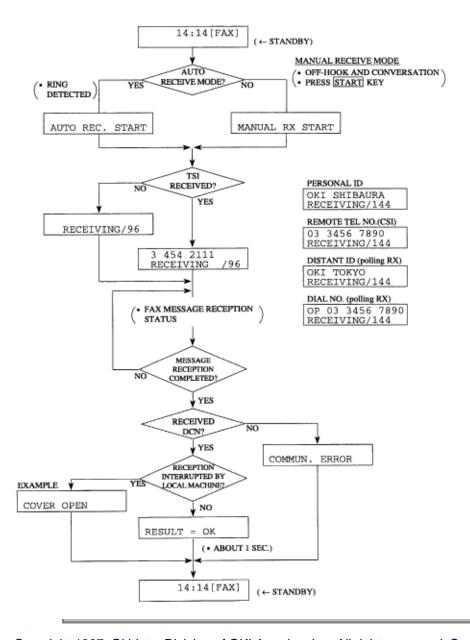
Fig. 2.9.5 Typical Transmission Flow





**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

Fig. 2.9.6 Typical Reception Flow



Page: 86



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

## C. Installation of Optional Units

2.10.01 Items

- Memory board
- PC interface board
- Telephone handset



## **Chapter 2 Setup Information**

### 2.10.02 Procedure

Turn the facsimile power switch OFF and remove the AC power cord.

*Note:* Unplug the AC power cord from the wall outlet first and then from the facsimile.

- Do not remove unnecessary parts.
- Since screws and small parts are easily misplaced, they should temporarily be attached to their original positions.



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

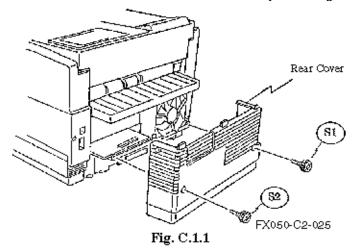
### Installation of the memory board

In the OKIFAX 1050, one of either the MEM or MEM-2 memory board can be mounted on to the connector CN12 of the OKIFAX 1050 MCNT board. However, choose either memory board or PCIU board in order to use this connector (CN12).

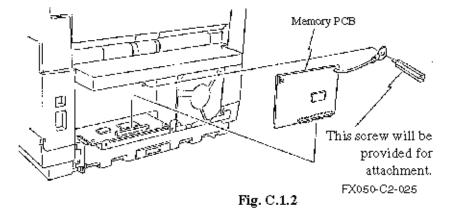
In the OKIFAX 2350/2450, one of MEM, MEM-2 or MEM-3 memory board can be mounted on to the connector CN13 of the OKIFAX 2350/2450 MCNT board.

#### **OKIFAX 1050**

Remove Rear Cover Remove the rear cover by removing the two screws S1 and S2.

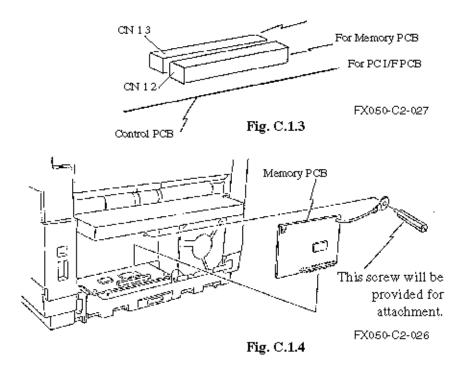


Install Memory Board: First, install the memory board on to the connector CN12 of the OKIFAX 1050 MCNT board, and then screw down the earth cable on the separation plate.



### **OKIFAX 2350/2450**

Installation of the memory board of OKIFAX 2350/2450 is same as OKIFAX 1050. However, the memory board is installed on the inner side connector CN13 designated by Fig. C.1.3.



**Note:** Fit the fixing hooks an anchor positions on the cassette guide, after that, lift the rear cover slightly and push it to the inside. Tighten the two screws S1 and S2.



**Chapter 2 Setup Information** 

## Installation of PCIU (PC interface) board

#### **OKIFAX 1050**

Remove Rear Cover Remove the rear cover by removing the two screws S1 and S2. Install PCIU board First, install PCIU board on to the connector CN12 of the OKIFAX 1050 MCNT board, and then tighten the two screws to the separation plate.

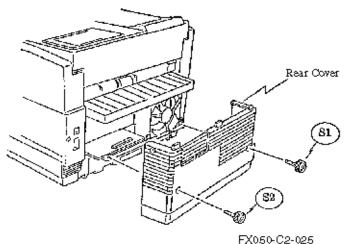
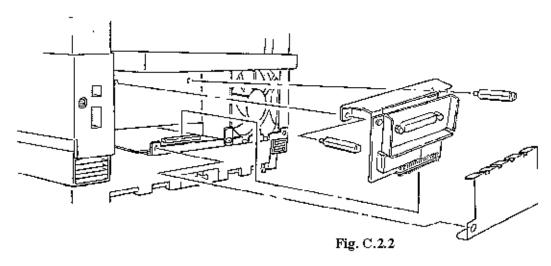
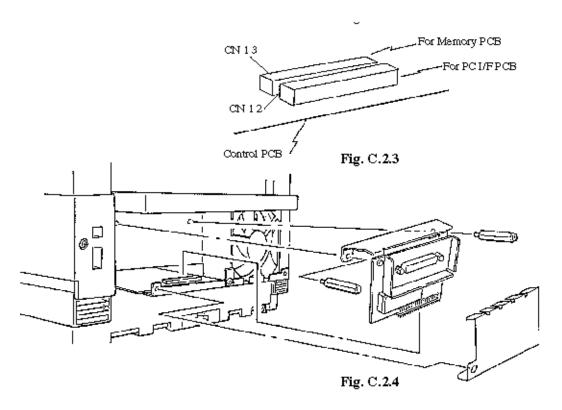


Fig. C.2.1



#### **OKIFAX 2350/2450**

Installation of PCIU board for OKIFAX 2350/2450 is same as OKIFAX 1050. However, PCIU board is installed on the outside connector designated by Fig. C.2.3.



After having taken out the telephone set, telephone handset and curled cord from the carton box, connect them as show in Fig. C.3.2.

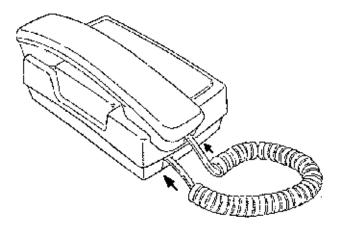


Fig. C.3.2

After installing the connection cable to the telephone set, extend the connection cable as in Fig. C.3.3.

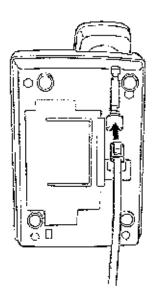


Fig. C.3.3

After installing the cradle assembly to the telephone set, fix the screw as in Fig. C.3.4.

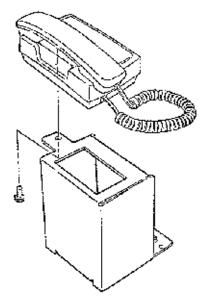


Fig. C.3.4

Install the telephone assembly on the facsimile transceiver unit. In this case, cram the telephone assembly into the position of Fig. C.3.5 by lifting the facsimile transceiver unit slightly. When 2'nd tray is mounted on the facsimile transceiver unit, install the telephone assembly in the position of Fig. C.3.5.

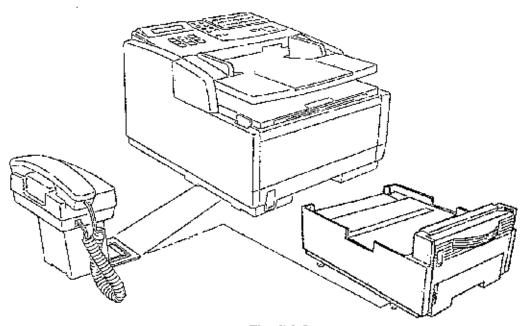


Fig. C.3.5

Connect the terminal of the other side of the connection cable formed on the rear side of the equipment, like Fig. C.3.6, to the telephone set.

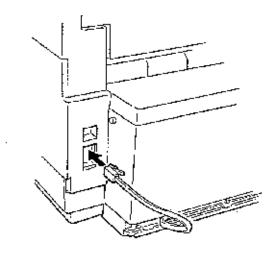


Fig. C.3.6



## **Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation**

## **Section 1: Board Description**

## 3.1 Unit Configuration and Block Diagram

### 3.1.01 The unit configuration of the OKIFAX 1050 is as follows:

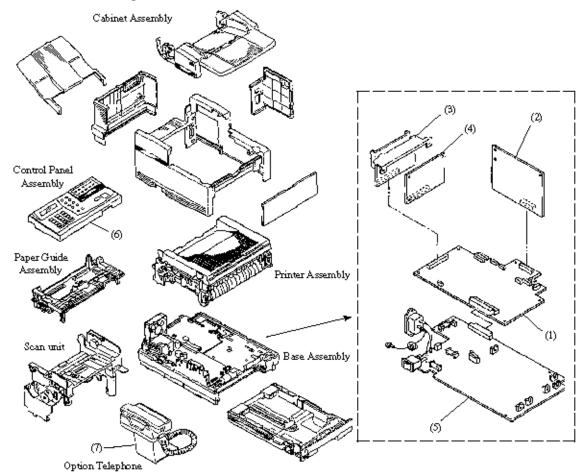


Figure 3.1.1 Unit Configuration of OKIFAX 1050

- (1) Main control board (MCNT) (R054/R050)
- (2) Network control unit (NCU)
- (3) PC interface board (P050): option ... See note.
- (4) Memory board (MEMO): option ... See note.
- (5) Power supply unit (FXVE: 120 V, FXVH: 230 V)

- (6) Operation panel board (YOPE)
- (7) Optional Telephone (boards) Telephone interface board (TEL-U) Hook board (HOOK)

*Note:* Either the PC Interface or Optional Memory Board can be installed in the OKIFAX 1050. Because there is one expansion connector, however, both boards cannot be installed at the same time.



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

## 3.1.02 The unit configuration of the OKIFAX 2350/2450 is as follows:

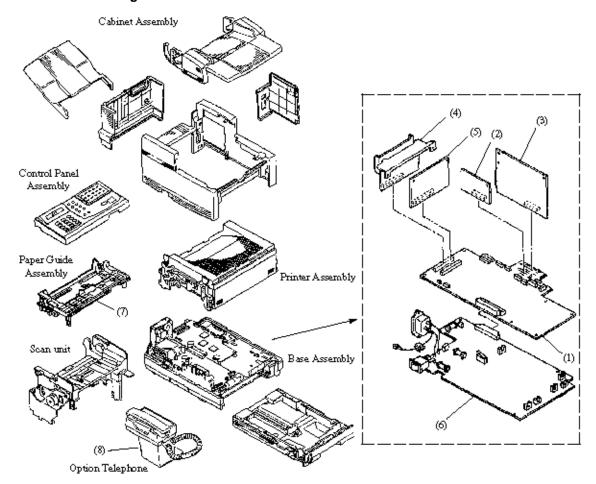


Figure 3.1.2 Unit Configuration of OKIFAX 2350/2450

- (1) Main control board (R175 for OKIFAX 2350/R175-2 for OKIFAX 2450)
- (2) Modem board (MODEM)
- (3) Network control unit (NCU)
- (4) PC interface board (P050): option
- (5) Memory board (MEMO): option
- (6) Power supply unit (FXVE: 120 V, FXVH: 230 V)
- (7) Operation panel board (YOPE-2)

(8) Optional Telephone (boards) Telephone interface board (TEL-U) Hook board (HOOK)



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### 3.2 Overall Dimension and Mechanical Structure of OKIFAX 1050

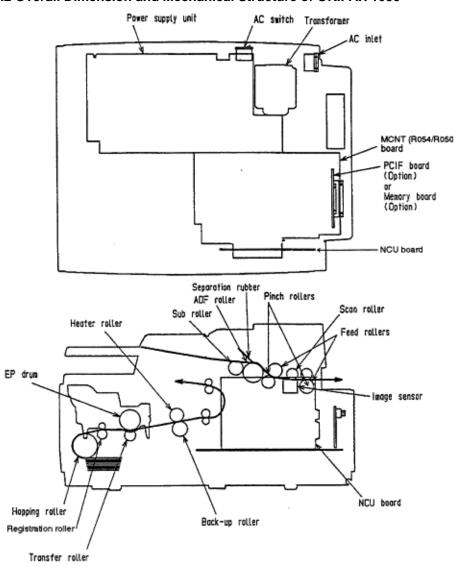


Figure 3.2. Overall Dimension and Mechanical Structure



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### 3.3 Overall Dimension and Mechanical Structure of OKIFAX 2350/2450

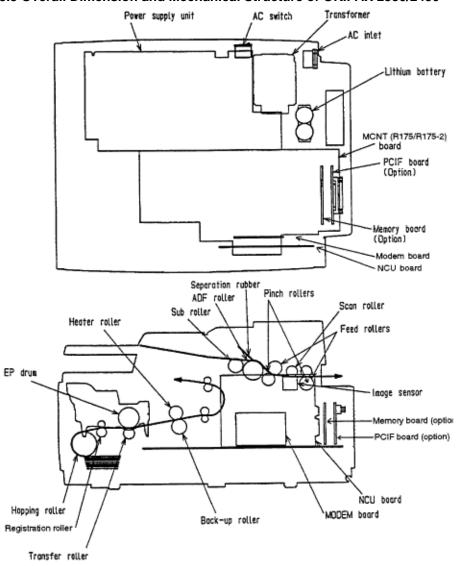


Figure 3.3 Overall Dimension and Mechanical Structure



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

#### 3.4 Boards and Units

#### 3.4.01 OKIFAX 1050 Boards and Units

The following boards, and units constitute the OKIFAX 1050 facsimile transceiver machine.

Main control board MCNT: (R054/R050) Network control unit board NCU: (NCUU)

Memory board (option) MEM: (MEMO; 0.5MB, MEMO-2; 1MB) Telephone interface board (option) TEL: (TEL-U, HOOK)

PC interface board (option) PC I/F: (PCIU) Operation panel assembly unit OPE: (YOPE) Power supply unit POW UNIT: (FXVE, FXVH)

Printer unit

Figure 3.3.1 shows the block diagram of OKIFAX 1050 facsimile transceiver.

3.4.02 OKIFAX 2350/2450 Boards and Units

The following boards and units constitute the OKIFAX 2350/2450 facsimile transceiver machine.

Main control board MCNT: (OKIFAX 2350, R175; OKIFAX 2350/2450) Modem board MODEM: (MODE; 9.6kbps, MODE-2; 14.4 kbps)

Network control unit board NCU: (NCUU)

Memory board (option) MEM: (MEMO; 0.5MB, MEMO-2; 1MB, MEMO-3; 2MB)

Telephone interface board (option) TEL: (TEL-U, HOOK)

PC interface board (option) PC I/F: (PCIU) Operation panel assembly unit OPE: (YOPE-2) Power supply unit POW UNIT: (FXVE, FXVH)

Printer unit

Figure 3.4.2 shows the block diagram of OKIFAX 2350/2450 facsimile transceiver.



#### **Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation**

#### 3.5 Function of Each Board

The section describes the principal functions of the individual units of the OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450 electrical sections.

Figure 3.5.1 and 3.5.2 shows the pertinent block diagram.

3.5.01 Main Control (MCNT) R054/R050 (OKIFAX 1050)/R175 (OKIFAX 2350)/R175-2 (OKIFAX 2450) board

**CPU** 

Basic processor

Scanning control

Picture processing control

Printing control

SIO (Serial input/output) control

IOGA (Input/output gate array)

Image Sensor control

Image smoothing

Strobe signals control for LED head

Printer control

Peripheral input/output control (Second Tray Unit, PC Interface)

Flash ROM (Instead of EPROM and SRAM)

Memory storage for system program, user and technical function programming

and defaults

DRAM (For OKIFAX 1050)/P-SRAM (For OKIFAX 2350/2450)

Memory storage for ECM operations, memory broadcast, delayed broadcast,

etc.

Back-up battery circuit

Nonrechargable lithium battery supplies voltage to the real time clock which maintains the system time and date clock.

Real-time clock IC

Used as a timepiece to display the date and time.

Audio monitor circuit

Contact image sensor control

I EXSEED (For OKIFAX 2350/2450)

Image data processing

SRAM (For OKIFAX 2350/2450)

Memory storage for image picture data Interface for optional memory, PC

Interface, HSLS

Supervision of the following external statuses:

Presence of document on hopper (ADF sensor PC1)

Presence of document at scanning position (ADF sendor PC2)

Send motor control

Fan motor control

Main motor control Registration motor control

Modem chip (For OKIFAX 1050) and Modem board (For OKIFAX 2350/2450)

Modulation and demodulation for V.33 and V.17 (For OKIFAX 2450 / OKIFAX

2350: Option)

Modulation and demodulation for V.29 and V.27 ter

Modulation and demodulation for V.21
D/A converter for SEND DATA (TX)
A/D converter for RECEIVE DATA (RX)
Amplitude equalizer for RX DATA
Selectable attenuation for TX (via programming)
Automatic gain control
Generation of single-frequency signals for tonal signals
Detection of single-frequency tonal signals
Generation of Dual Time Multiple-Frequency signals for tone dialing



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

## 3.5.02 Operation panel unit: YOPE (OKIFAX 1050)/YOPE-2 (OKIFAX 2350/2450) board

Note: Operation Panel Unit must be replaced as an assembly. Individual boards are not available.

Supervision of switches on operation panel Control of LEDs on operation panel Control of LCD on operation panel

LED: Light-emitting diode LCD: Liquid crystal display



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

#### 3.5.03 NCUU board

Conversion of receive data and receive signals to internal signal level Conversion of send data and send signals to external signal level Generation of dial pulses to telephone line Detection of ringing signal

Detection of busy tone (conjunction with Modem unit)

Detection of hook signal (on hook /off hook indication) Interface with telephone handset (option) Output of send data and send signals to telephone line

Input of receive data and receive signals from telephone line



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

#### 3.5.04 Power supply unit: FXVE (120V)/FXVH (230V) board

Conversion of main alternating current to the following direct currents:

- +5V DC power supply
- +8V DC/-8V DC power supply
- +30V DC power supply

Supplying of main alternating current to fuser unit

Generation of medium voltages +300V, -300V, +400V, -450V and 0V

Generation of high voltages -1.35 kV, -0.75 kV and +1 kV



# **Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

## 3.5.05 MEMO (memory) board (Option)

P-SRAM

Memory storage for ECM operations, memory broadcast, delayed broadcast, etc.



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

## 3.5.06 P050 board (Optional PC Interface)

The P050 board is used as an interface between the OKIFAX units and PC compatible computer



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

## 3.5.07 HOOK board (Optional handset)

Hook switch circuit



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

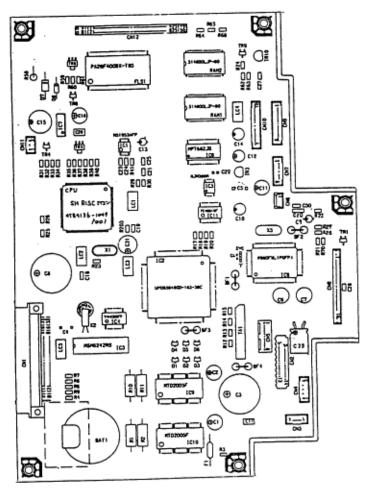
Speech network circuit



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

# 3.5.09 TQSB board (installed within second paper cassette option) Second paper cassette unit for OKIFAX 2350/2450.

MOS-CPU Motor control Interfaces with the Main Control Board to provide second paper cassette control



**R054 Package Layout (OKIFAX 1050)** 



# **Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450**

#### **Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation**

#### Meaning of abbreviations used in Block Diagram

A/D: Analog-to-digital converter

AMP: Amplifier BATT: Battery

CNi: Connector number i CPU: Central processing unit D-MOTOR: Drum motor

DRV: Motor drive

DRAM: Dynamic random-access memory EXSEE: Image processing gate array

FAN: Fan motor

FLASH: Flash memory

IOGA 1: Input output gate array IOGA 2: Input output gate array PCi: Photocoupler number i POW.UNIT: Power supply unit PSRAM: Pseudo-SRAM R-MOTOR: Resist motor

R-MOTOR: Resist motor RTC: Real time clock S-MOTOR: Send motor

SRAM: Static random-access memory

Xtal: Crystal oscillator

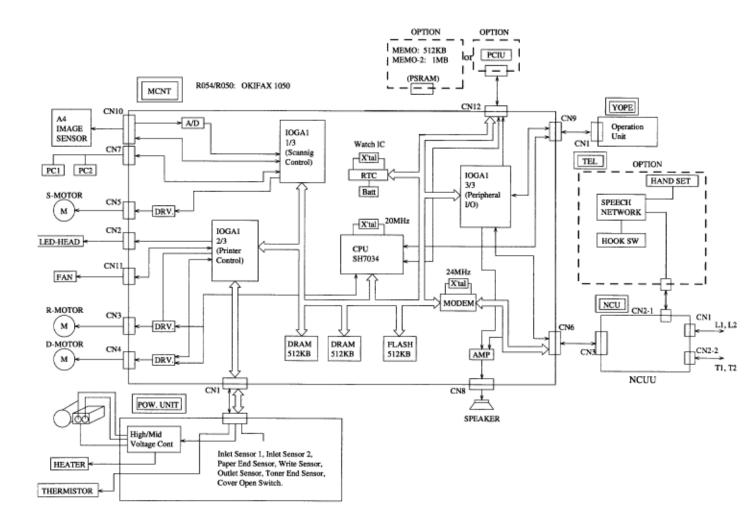
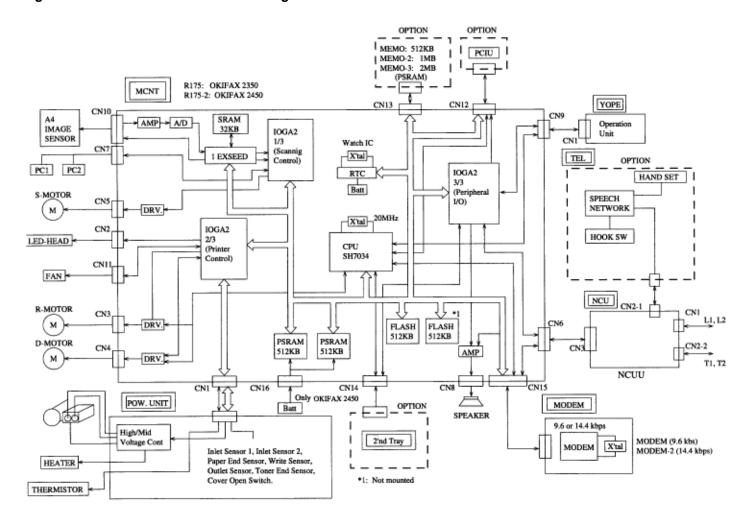


Figure 3.5.1 OKIFAX 1050 Block Diagram



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

Figure 3.5.2 OKIFAX 2350/2450 Block Diagram





# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

#### 3.6 Explanation of Signal Flow for OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450

**Note:** Regarding the difference of the signal flow between OKIFAX 1050 and OKIFAX 2350/2450, since one-line scanning processing speed of OKIFAX 2350/2450 is faster in comparison with OKIFAX 1050, to the circuit diagram of OKIFAX 2350/2450 has added the EXSEED (image processing LSI) and SRAM (dark/light level correction data). Otherwise, the signal flow is almost the same as in OKIFAX 1050.

3.6.01 Copy Mode

#### Copy mode for OKIFAX 1050

Figure 3.7.1 shows the picture signal route in local copy mode for OKIFAX 1050

One-line picture data is transferred to A/D converter (analog/digital converter) from the scanning unit (CIS: contact image sensor) as an analog data. After conversion from analog data to 6-bit digital data by A/D converter, the picture data is sent to DRAM (line memory) via IOGA by DMA (Direct Memory Access). Then the picture data is sent to IOGA again. Here, the picture data undergoes various kinds of picture processings (IOGA and CPU), and is converted to two-level binary data (black and white). The one-line binary data from IOGA is stored into DRAMs (page memory). When the data for one page has been stored in the DRAMs, the data is read out from the DRAMs and sent to IOGA. The data is converted into a serial data by the picture control of IOGA and transferred to the LED print head for printing as HDATA. Writing of data into the page memory is also possible during the printing operation.

#### Copy mode for OKIFAX 2350/2450

Figure 3.8.1 shows the picture signal route in local copy mode for OKIFAX 2350/2450

One-line picture data is transferred to A/D converter (analog/digital) via operational amplifier from the scanning unit (CIS: contact image sensor) as an analog data. After conversion from analog data to 6-bit digital data by A/D converter, the picture data is sent to EXSEED (image processing LSI) and SRAM. Here, the picture data undergoes various kinds of picture processings (EXSEED and SRAM), converted to two-level binary data (black and white) and then sent to IOGA (scanning control). The one-line binary picture data from IOGA is stored into P-SRAM (pseudo-SRAM). When the data for one page has been stored in the P-SRAM, the data is read out from the P-SRAM and sent to IOGA. The data is converted into a serial data by the picture control of IOGA and transferred to the LED print head for printing as HDATA. Writing of data into the page memory is also possible during the printing operation.

3.6.02 G3 Send Mode

Figure 3.7.4 (For OKIFAX 1050)/Figure 3.8.4 (For OKIFAX 2350/2450) show the G3 send picture signal route

In the G3 mode, the data transfer route from the scan unit up to the DRAM (for OKIFAX 1050)/ P-SRAM (for OKIFAX 2350/2450) is the same as in the copy mode described in 3.6.01.

The picture data for one-line is transferred from DRAM/P-SRAM to CPU. The CPU performs the picture data processing (encode) for this picture data (FILLER, fill bits are inserted) and again stored into the DRAM/P-SRAM. The stored encoded data is output from DRAM/P-SRAM to the MODEM under the control of CPU. After modulation, the picture signal S (TXOUT) is sent to the NCU board as the transmission data. The transmission data S goes through the amplifier and is sent to the telephone line L1 and L2 via the transformer T1 as high speed signal.

#### 3.6.03 G3 receive Mode

Figure 3.7.5 (For OKIFAX 1050)/Figure 3.8.5 (For OKIFAX 2350/2450) show the G3 receive picture signal route

In the G3 mode, the high-speed picture signal arriving from the telephone line at L1 and L2 of NCU passes through the transformer T1 and the amplifier and is input to the MODEM as R signal. After demodulation by modem, the picture data is sent to CPU. The CPU performs the picture data processing (decode) for this picture data and stores into the DRAM (for OKIFAX 1050)/P-SRAM (for OKIFAX 2350/2450), Then, the stored picture data is again written into DRAM/P-SRAM (as a page memory) by the picture processing control of CPU. When the data for one page has been stored in the DRAM/P-SRAM, the data is read out from the DRAM/P-SRAM and sent to IOGA. The picture data is converted into a signal data by the printer control of IOGA and transferred to the LED print head for printing as HDATA.

#### 3.6.04 300bps Send Mode

Figure 3.7.2 (For OKIFAX 1050)/Figure 3.8.2 (For OKIFAX 2350/2450) show 300bps send protocol signal route

In G3 communication, this is the route of the procedural control signals (pre-message, post-message phases etc.) at 300bps.

The protocol send data is read into DRAM (for OKIFAX 1050)/P-SRAM (for OKIFAX 2350/2450) in the sequence the contents of various data stored in the FLASH memory area in advance under the control of CPU. The contents of the frame has been edited on the DRAM/P-SRAM by CPU and sent to MODEM via CPU. HDLC (high level data link control) frame of the data is structured by the modem and converted to serial data in synchrony with the modems DCLK (data clock). After modulation, the protocol signal is output from S of the modem and sent to the telephone line L1 and L2 via the transformer T1 of NCU.

#### 3.6.05 300bps Receive Mode

Figure 3.7.3 (For OKIFAX 1050)/Figure 3.8.3 (For OKIFAX 2350/2450) show 300bps receive protocol signal route.

In G3 communication, this is the route of the procedural control signals (pre-message, post-message phases etc.) at 300bps.

The 300bps modulated signals received via the telephone line L1 and L2 of the NCU and sent from pin R to Pin RXIN of the modem. After demodulation by the modem, the demodulated digital signals are sent to the CPU via the data bus from the modem. The data is read and decoded by the CPU and written into the DRAM/P-SRAM. The written data is interpreted according to bit assignment of the binary procedural signals in the ITU recommendations. The successive modes of communication (for example, line density, encoding scheme, etc.) are determined.

#### 3.6.06 Report Printing

This signal route describes the printing route of character data used to print Activity Report, Message Confirmation Report, etc.

The report data is read into DRAM (for OKIFAX 1050)/P-SRAM (for OKIFAX 2350/2450) in the sequence the contents of data stored in the FLASH memory in advance under the control of CPU. The contents of data is edited on the DRAM/P-SRAM. The data is read out from the DRAM/P-SRAM and sent to IOGA. The data is converted into a serial data by the picture control of IOGA and transferred to the LED print head for printing as HDATA.

#### 3.6.07 Memory Transmission

This signal route describes the memory transmission used in broadcast mode, delayed broadcast mode, etc.

The stored encoded data undergoes buffering, passes through CPU, MODEM and NCU and then sent out to the telephone line.

#### 3.6.08 Memory Reception

This signal route describes the memory reception used in no-paper mode, no-toner reception, confidential mode, etc.

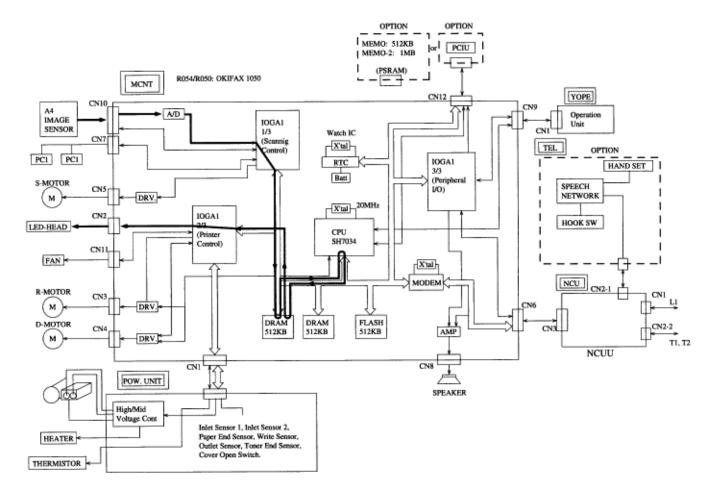
The encoded data received by the same route of (3) G3 receive mode undergoes the picture data processing and stored into memory (DRAM for OKIFAX 1050/P-SRAM for OKIFAX 2350/2450) as such. In case of printing, When the data for one page has been stored in the memory (DRAM/P-SRAM), the data is read out from the memory and sent to IOGA. The printed data is converted into a serial data by the printer control of IOGA and transferred to the LED print head for printing as HDATA.



#### **Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation**

#### 3.7 Signal Flow by Mode of operation (OKIFAX 1050)

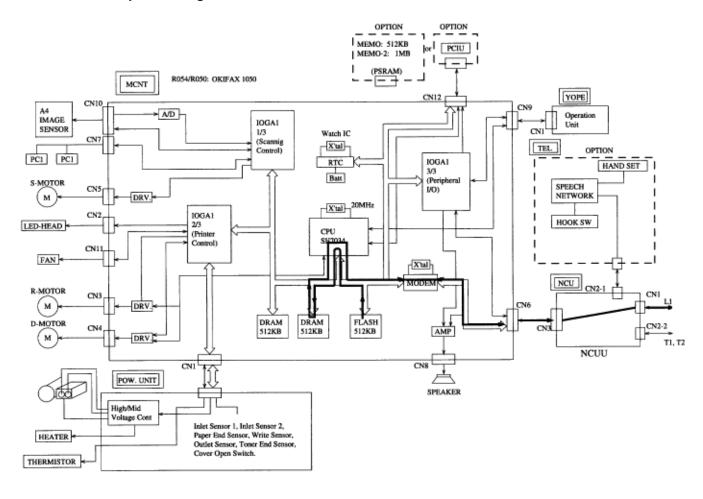
- 3.7.01 Copy picture signal Figure 3.7.1 shows the picture signal route in local copy mode.
- 3.7.02 300 bps send signal Figure 3.7.2 shows the 300 bps send protocol signal route.
- 3.7.03 300 bps receive signal Figure 3.7.3 shows the 300 bps receive protocol signal route.
- 3.7.04 G3 send picture signal Figure 3.7.4 shows the G3 send picture signal route.
- 3.7.05 G3 receive picture signal Figure 3.7.5 shows the G3 receive picture signal route.
- 3.7.06 Report print signal Figure 3.7.6 shows the report print signal route.





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

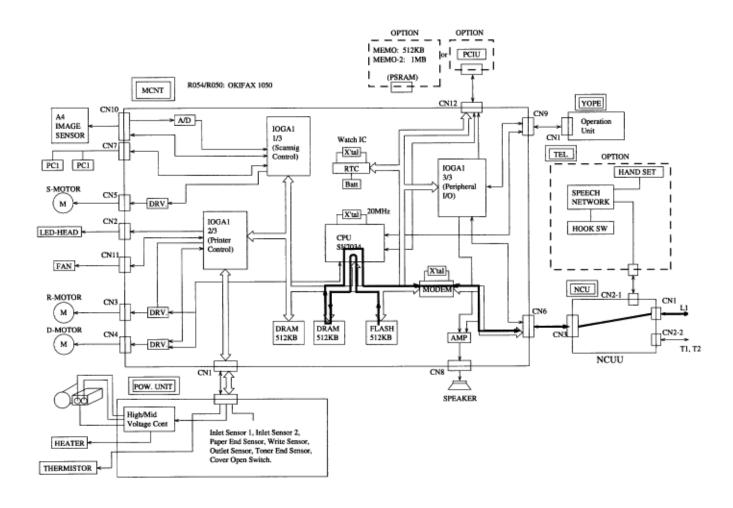
## Okifax 1050 300 bps Send Signal





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

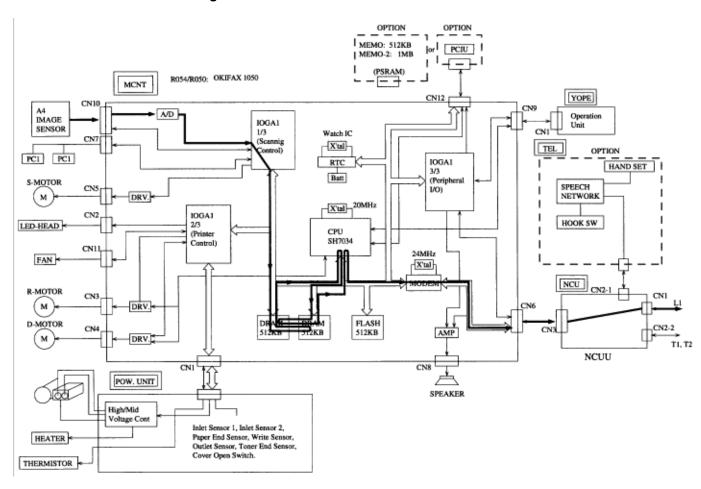
## Okifax 1050 300 bps Receive Signal





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

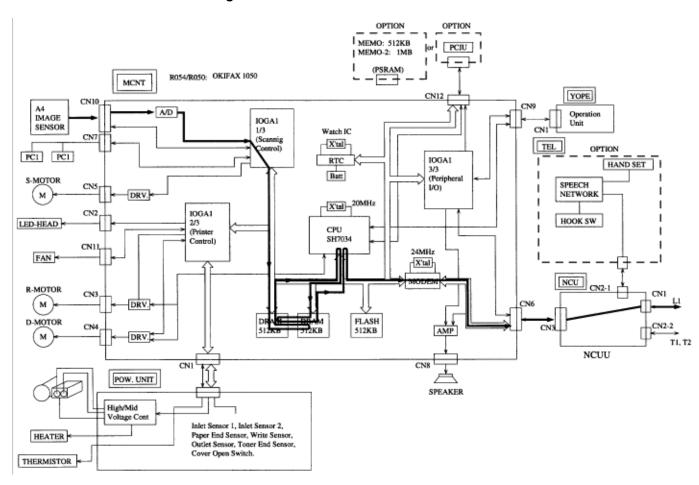
## Okifax 1050 G3 Send Picture Signal





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

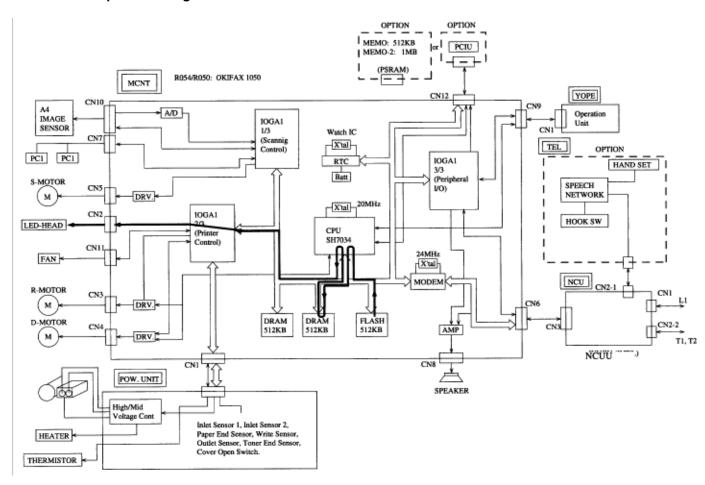
## Okifax 1050 G3 Receive Picture Signal





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

## **Okifax 1050 Report Print Signal**

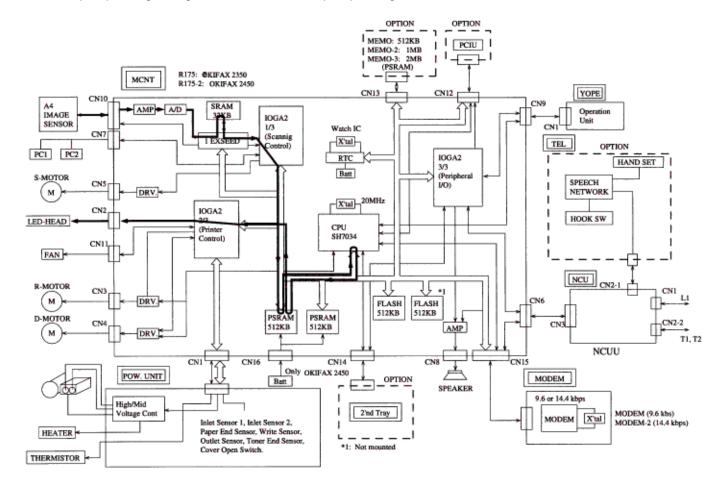




#### **Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation**

#### 3.8 Signal Flow by Mode of Operation (OKIFAX 2350/2450)

- 3.8.01 Copy picture signal Figure 3.8.1 shows the picture signal route in local copy mode.
- 3.8.02 300 bps send signal Figure 3.8.2 shows the 300 bps send protocol signal route.
- 3.8.03 300 bps receive signal Figure 3.8.3 shows the 300 bps receive protocol signal route.
- 3.8.04 G3 send picture signal Figure 3.8.4 shows the G3 send picture signal route.
- 3.8.05 G3 receive picture signal Figure 3.8.5 shows the G3 receive picture signal route.
- 3.8.06 Report print signal Figure 3.8.6 shows the report print signal route.

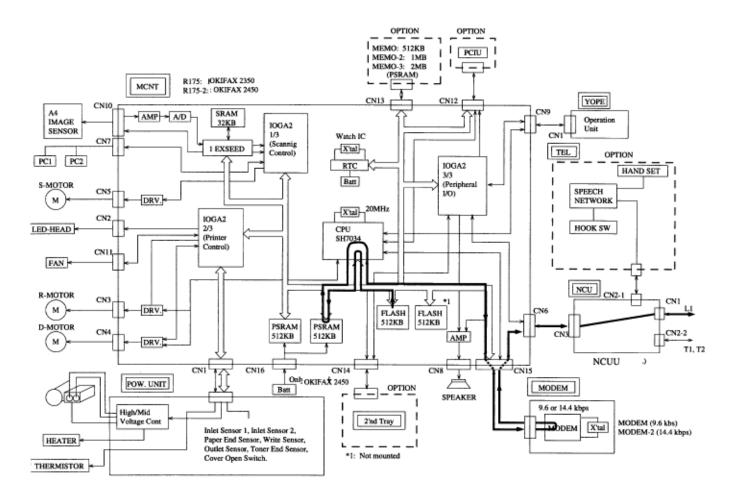


Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

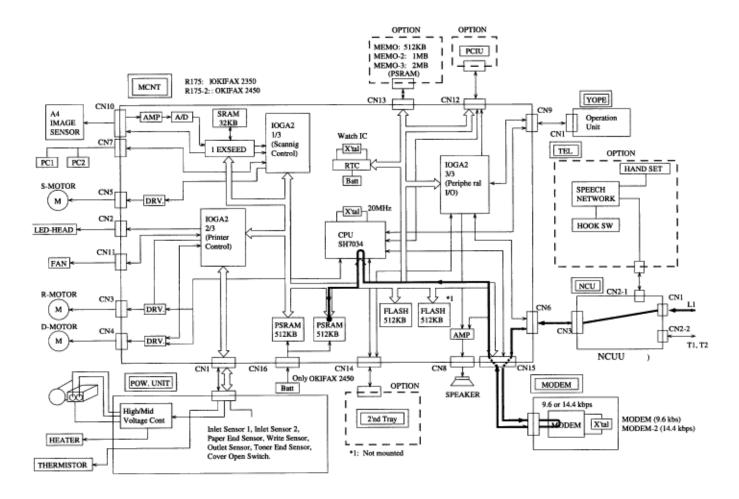
## Okifax 2350/2450 300 bps Send





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

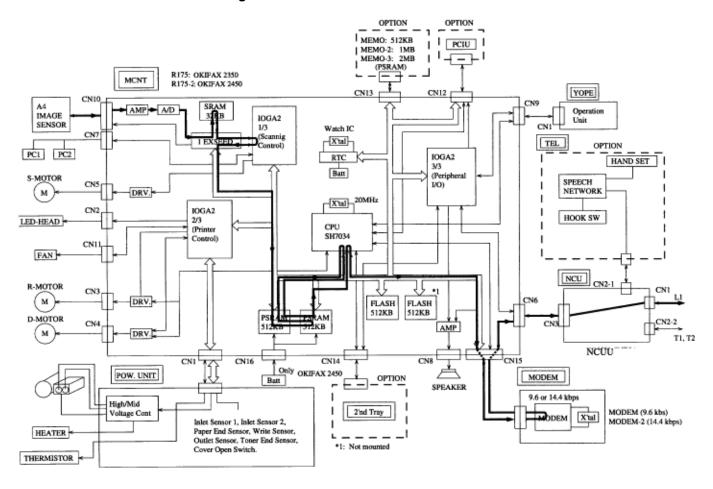
## Okifax 2350/2450 300 bps Receive Signal





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

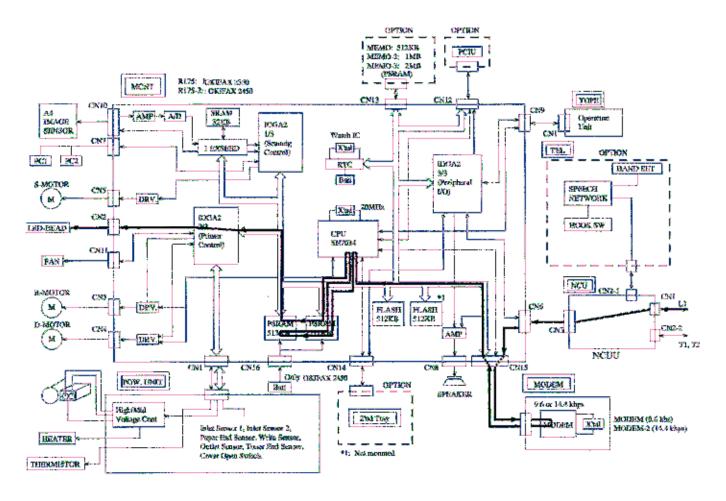
## Okifax 2350/2450 G3 Send Picture Signal





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

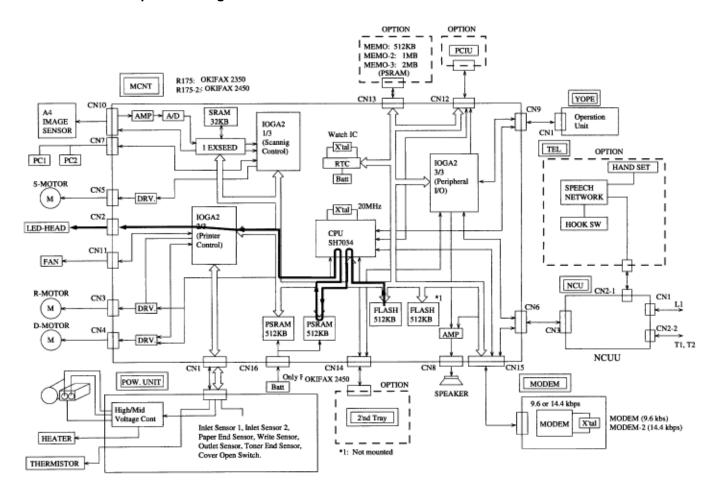
## Okifax 2350/2450 G3 Receive Picture Signal





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

## Okifax 2350/2450 Report Print Signal





# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

#### 3.9 Power Supply Unit

3.9.01 FXVE (for 120 V)/FXVH (for 230 V) Circuit Diagram (1/2)

**IMPORTANT:** Okidata recommends that maintenance of the Power supply unit (FXVE/FXVH board) be performed by replacement of a unit, not by replacement of components.

#### Therefore,

- circuit descriptions in this section are for reference.
- orders for components of the power supply unit cannot be accepted.

Functions of unit:

FXVE/FXVH circuit generates the following direct currents (DC) based on the alternating current, AC 120 V +6%, -15% AC 230 V +15%, -14%

1. Low-voltage power supply circuit

This circuit generates the following voltages.

| Output Voltage | Output Voltage  |
|----------------|---|
| +5 V           | Logic circuit supply voltage (IC, LSI), and high-voltage source voltage                     |
| +8 V           | Charging circuit for OKIFAX 2450 Image Data battery backup                                  |
| +5 V           | CIS (contact image sensor)  |
| +5 V           | Send motor, drum motor, resist motor, fan drive, flash memory, CIS, and second tray voltage |

#### 2. Input ratings

Voltage: AC 120 V+6%, -15% (AC 102 V to 127 V) AC 230 V+15%, -14% (AC 198 V to 264 V)

Frequency: 50 Hz/60 Hz +/-2%

#### 3. Output ratings

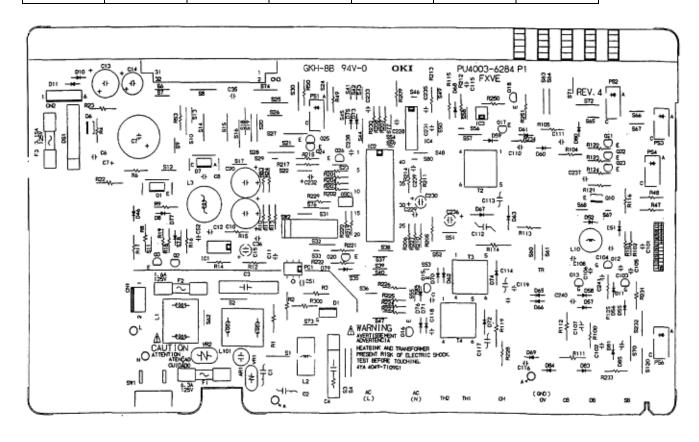
Transformer type A (OKIFAX 1050)

| Pin No. | Rated<br>Voltage | Rated<br>Current | Current<br>Range | Voltage<br>Range | Output<br>Ripple | Output<br>Noise |
|---------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
|         | Vollage          | Current          | Manye            | ixariye          | Kibbie           | 110136          |

| CN3-11,<br>12<br>CN3-28 | +5 V  | 1.8 A  | 0.2 to 4.5<br>A | 5 V ± 4%        | 100<br>mVP-P | 250<br>mVP-P |
|-------------------------|-------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| CN3-4, 32               | +30 V | 0.95 A | 0 to 0.95 A     | -               | 4.0 VP-P     | -            |
| CN3-30                  | +8 V  | 0.1 A  | 0 to 0.1 A      | 6.5 to 15 V     | 3.0 VP-P     | 3.6 VP-P     |
| CN3-28                  | -8 V  | 0.1 A  | 0 to 0.1 A      | -15 to 6.5<br>V | 3.0 VP-P     | 3.6 VP-P     |

# Transformer type B(OKIFAX 2350/2450)

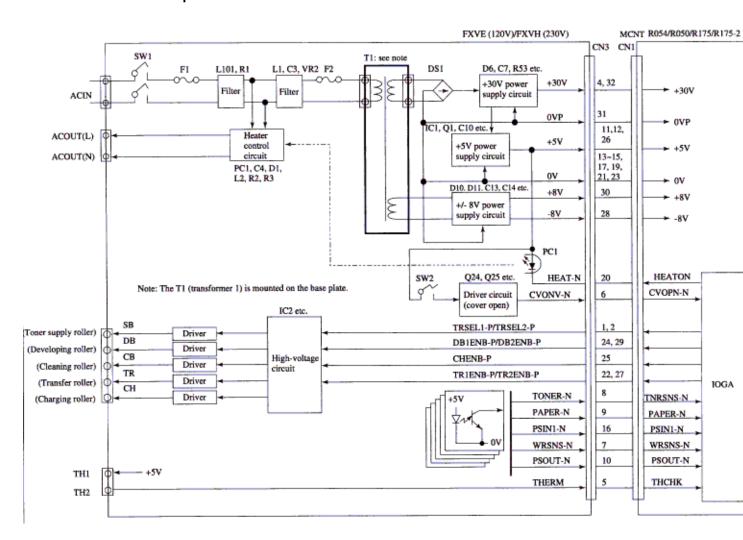
| Pin No.                 | Rated<br>Voltage | Rated<br>Current | Current<br>Range | Voltage<br>Range | Output<br>Ripple | Output<br>Noise |
|-------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| CN3-11,<br>12<br>CN3-26 | +5 V             | 1.8 A            | 0.2 to 4.5<br>A  | 5 V ± 4%         | 100<br>mVP-P     | 250<br>mVP-P    |
| CN3-4, 32               | +30 V            | 1.20 A           | 0 to 1.20 A      | -                | 4.0 VP-P         | -               |
| CN3-30                  | +8 V             | 0.1 A            | 0 to 0.1 A       | 6.5 to 15 V      | 3.0 VP-P         | 3.6 VP-P        |
| CN3-28                  | -8 V             | 0.1 A            | 0 to 0.1 A       | -15 to 6.5<br>V  | 3.0 VP-P         | 3.6 VP-P        |





#### **Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation**

#### **General functional description**





3.9.02 Power Supply Unit (FXVE/FXVH)

#### **General functional description**

#### 1. General

The power supply unit consists mainly of an AC transformer and a power PCB (FXVE board for AC120V/FXVH board for AC230V). A block diagram of the power supply unit is shown in Figure A3.XX. The power PCB is composed of five main circuits: AC input section, heater control section, low-voltage section, high-voltage section and protection circuit.

The low-voltage section provides a +5V output by a DC-DC converter and other output voltages (+30V, +8V and -8V) simply by rectifying and smoothing the respective outputs of the AC trans-former. The high-voltage section (TR1, TR2, DB1, DB2, SB2, CB and CH) produces a flyback voltage from 5V by using a drum coil and a high-voltage transformer.

#### 2. Circuit description

#### AC input section

AC commercial power is supplied to line filter circuit through the AC inlet, power switch (SW1) and the fuse (F1). Fuse F1 is used for protecting the heater circuit.

Fuse F2 is used to protect the secondary circuit from overvoltage from the AC input line. This fuse F2 is not mounted in the power supply unit for 230VAC input.

#### Heater control circuit

The on/off operation of the heater is controlled by the operation of photocoupler PC1 whose operation is controlled by the HEAT-N signal applied to CN3-20 pin from the control PCB (R054R050/R175/R175-2 board).

#### 3. Low-voltage section

#### +30 V circuit

This circuit provides +30 V output by rectifying the corresponding output of transformer T1 and smoothing the rectified signal by capacitor C7.

#### +/- 8 V circuit

This circuit provides +8 V and -8 V outputs by rectifying the corresponding output of transformer T1, smoothing the rectified signals by capacitors C13 and C14.

#### +5 V circuit

This circuit provides +5 V output using output by means of DC-DC converter circuit.

#### 4. Protection circuits

The protection circuit includes fuse F3 for +30 V and +5 V for overcurrent protection.

If an overvoltage is applied to the +5 V circuit, fuse F3 will blow.

F1 will blow only in the event of AC line shortcircuit.

#### 5. Cover open circuit

The cover open circuit consists of SW2, Q24 and Q25. When the stacker cover is opened, the cover open microswitch (SW2) on the FXVE/FXVH board is turned off to cut the supply of 5V to the high-voltage power supply circuit. As a result all high-voltage outputs are interrupted. At the same time, a signal is sent to the control board to notify it the off state of the microswitch, and the control board performs the cover open processing, and display message.

#### 6.. High-voltage section

#### Functional overview

The high-voltage outputs consist of TR1 (1 kV), TR2 (-0.75 kV), DB1 (+300 V), DB2 (-300 V), SB2 (-450V), CB (+400 V) and CH (-1.35 kV) and are obtained as follows. The control signal obtained from connector CN3 is applied to power control IC2. As result, the driver current from this IC2 is applied to the drive circuit, which will provide the high-voltage outputs.

#### Note:

| Signal Name | Output Voltage | Application                             |
|-------------|----------------|---|
| SB1/SB2     | 0±5 V/-450 V   | Voltage applied to toner supply roller. |
| DB1/DB2     | +300 V/-300 V  | Voltage applied to developing roller.   |
| TR1/TR2     | +1 kV/-0.75 kV | Voltage applied to transfer roller.     |
| СН          | -1.35 kV       | Voltage applied to charging roller.     |
| СВ          | +400 V         | Voltage applied to cleaning roller.     |



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### 3.9.03 FXVE (for 120 V)/FXVH (for 230 V) Circuit Diagram (2/2)

This circuit consists of power control IC2, photo-sensors and high voltage generation unit.

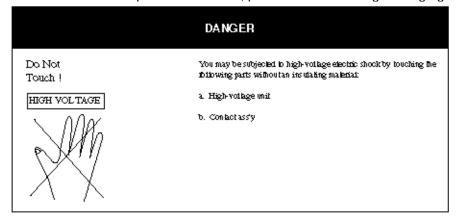
#### DANGER:

3.9.03 FXVE (for 120 V)/FXVH (for 230 V) Circuit Diagram (2/2)

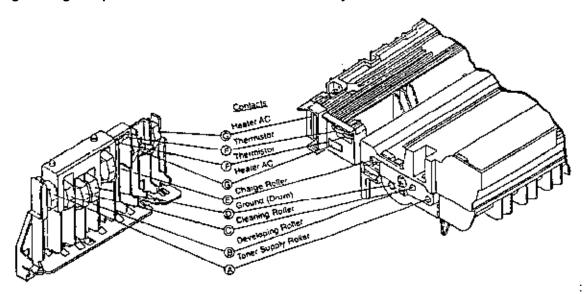
This circuit consists of power control IC2, photo-sensors and high voltage generation unit.

3.9.03 FXVE (for 120 V)/FXVH (for 230 V) Circuit Diagram (2/2)

This circuit consists of power control IC2, photo-sensors and high voltage generation unit.



High voltage outputs are connected to the contact assy as shown below:





#### 3.10 NCU Board

#### **Explanation of NCU circuit diagram**

This section briefly describes functional blocks of the NCU circuit diagram.

NCUU circuit diagram

Receiving Sensitivity

The receiving sensitivity is determined by the operational amplifier IC2.

Transmission Level

The transmission level is determined by operational amplifier IC2 and peripheral resistors and capacitors.

Ring Detection

The AC ring signal is converted to the secondary low voltage signal by photocoupler IC3, and output to the MCNT as signal RI. This notifies the MCNT that a call is incoming.

Off Hook Detection

The OFF HOOK signal is converted to the secondary, low voltage signal by photocoupler IC1, and output to the MCNT as signal HUP1. This notifies the MCNT that the phone line is off hook.

Relay Driver Circuit

CML (RL1 and RL4 relay) signal Relays RL1 and RL4 switch the line from telephone side to facsimile side.

DP (RL2 relay) signal

Relay RL2 generates dial pulses when calling a remote machine by auto-dialing under the control of DP signal on/off from output port (IOGA).

SR (RL3 relay) signal

Relay RL3 is used to detect hook-up of external telephone set.

Telephone Interface

Connectors CN1 and CN2 are used to provide an interface between the fax and telephone line.

Internal telephone set (optional) is connected across terminals of TEL1-L1 or TEL1-L2 by an RJ11-C modular jack.

External telephone set is connected across terminals of TEL2-L1 or TEL2-L2 by an RJ11-C modular jack.

Telephone exchange is connected across terminals LINE-L1 and LINE-L2 by an RJ11-C modular jack.

### NCUU Package Layout (OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450)

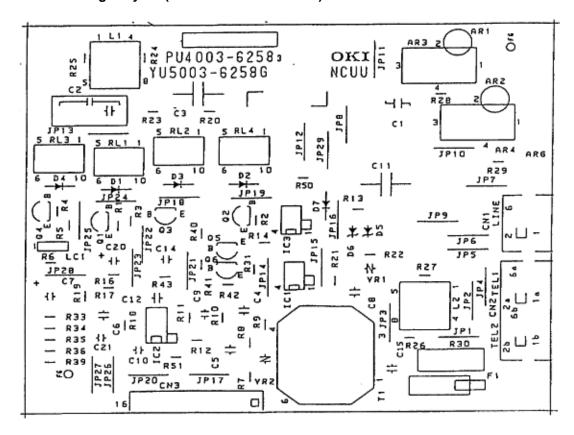
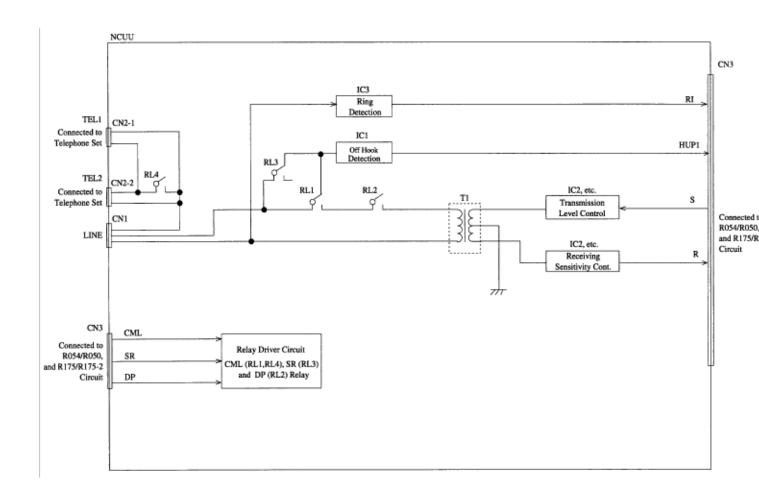


Figure 3.10.1 Block Diagram of NCUU



Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### 3.11 TELU Circuit Diagram (option)

TEL board is used as the interface board of the optional telephone assembly, when it is installed on the facsimile transceiver.

#### **Block diagram**

Figure 3.11.1 Block Diagram of TEL-U

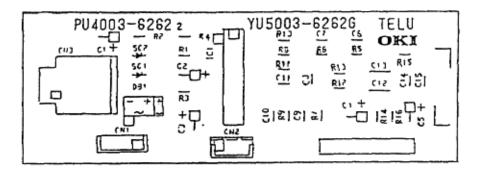
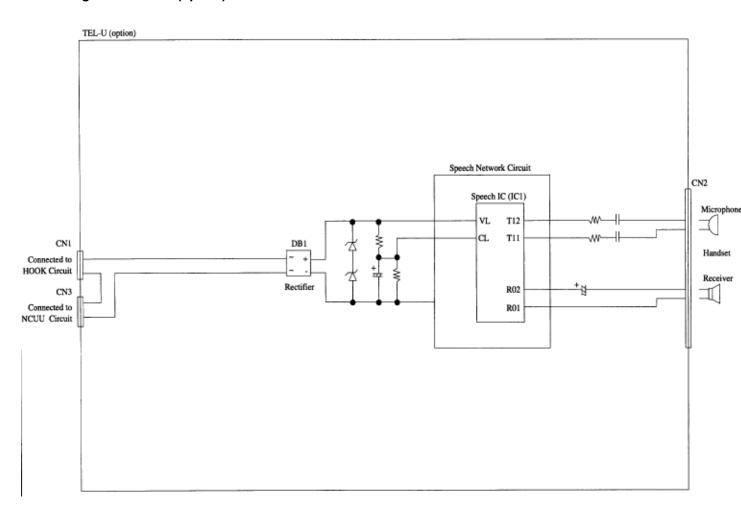


Figure 3.11.1 Block Diagram of TEL-U



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

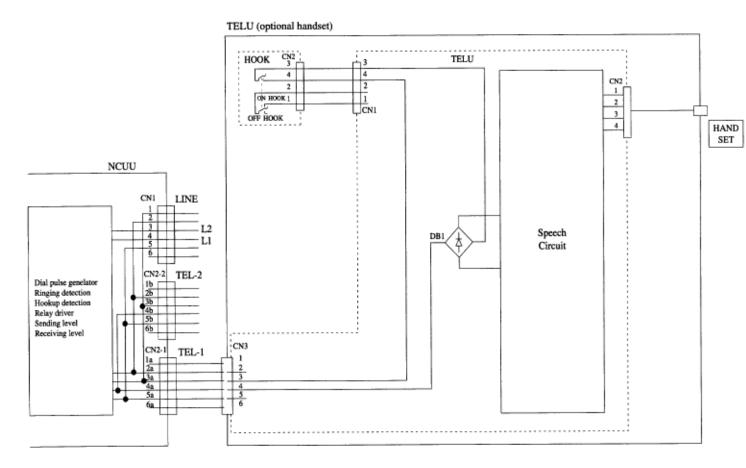
#### **Block Diagram of TEL-U (option)**





**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### Relationship between NCUU and TEL-U





#### 3.12 MEMO (memory) Circuit Diagram (option)

The optional memory board (MEM/MEM-2/MEM-3), is used for expanding the OKIFAX unit's Image (picture) memory..

#### **Block diagram**

Figure 3.12.1 shows a related signal of memory board.

MEMO/MEMO-2/MEMO-3 circuit consists of the following block.

- 1. 512 kbyte pesudo static RAM x 4 (RAM1 to RAM4). Used as follows: Picture memory for the ECM send/receive modes. Picture memory for the memory transmission mode. Picture memory for the retransmission data. Picture memory for the reception in memory
- 2. Memory capacity

One of 512 kbyte (MEMO) or 1 Mbyte (MEMO-2) memory board can be added for OKIFAX 1050.

One of 512 kbyte (MEMO), 1 Mbyte (MEMO-2) or 2 Mbyte (MEMO-3) memory board can be added for OKIFAX 2350/2450.

The relationship between memory capacity and mounted boards are shown in the following table:

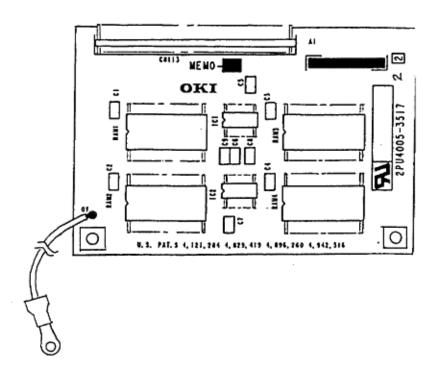
| Equipment           | Memory<br>Capacity | RAM1    | RAM2           | RAM3           | RAM4           | Mounted<br>Board<br>Name |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Okifax<br>1050      | OKIFAX             | Mounted | Not<br>mounted | Not<br>mounted | Not<br>mounted | МЕМО                     |
|                     | 1 Mbyte            | Mounted | Mounted        | Not<br>mounted | Not<br>mounted | MEMO-2                   |
| Okifax<br>2350/2450 | 512 kbyte          | Mounted | Not<br>mounted | Not<br>mounted | Not<br>mounted | МЕМО                     |
|                     | 1 Mbyte            | Mounted | Mounted        | Not<br>mounted | Not<br>mounted | MEMO-2                   |
|                     | 2 Mbyte            | Mounted | Mounted        | Mounted        | Mounted        | MEMO-3                   |

**Note:** Back-up time on electrical interruption; Min. one hour for OKIFAX 2450. The OKIFAX 1050/2350 does not back-up messages received in memory when power is lost.

3. Image memory capacity

|                      | Memory<br>Condition             | OKIFAX<br>1050<br>(pages) | OKIFAX<br>2350 (pages) | OKIFAX<br>2450 A4<br>Setting | OKIFAX<br>2450 LEGAL<br>Setting |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| With Option<br>Board | Standard<br>(without<br>option) | 17                        | 17                     | 35                           | 27                              |
|                      | 0.5 Mbyte                       | 56                        | 56                     | 79                           | 70                              |
|                      | 1.0 Mbyte                       | 100                       | 100                    | 120                          | 110                             |
|                      | 2.0 Mbyte                       | -                         | 180                    | 200                          | 195                             |

**Note:** No. of sheets are counted provided that ITU-T No.1 sample document is used. No. of sheets are typical value.



Expanded Memory (Optional) OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450



#### 3.13 P050 (PC interface unit) Circuit Diagram (option)

P050 board with RS232C (25 pin) is used as an interface between a PC compatible computer and OKIFAX 1050, 2350 or 2450. The OKIFAX connects to a serial port of the PC using an RS-232D cable (supplied with the optional PC Interface Kit).

**Note:** OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450 applies to EIA class 1 and class 2 as PC interface, although class 1 is used as the default setting.

#### **Block diagram**

P050 board circuit is composed of a Receiver, Driver, EPROM and RS232C (25 pin). Figure 3.13.1 shows related signals of P050 board.

#### **Function**

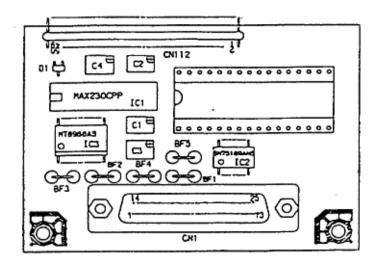
The following four modes are supported:

PC local printer mode

PC scanner mode

PC transmission mode

PC reception mode



PC Interface PCB (Optional) OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450

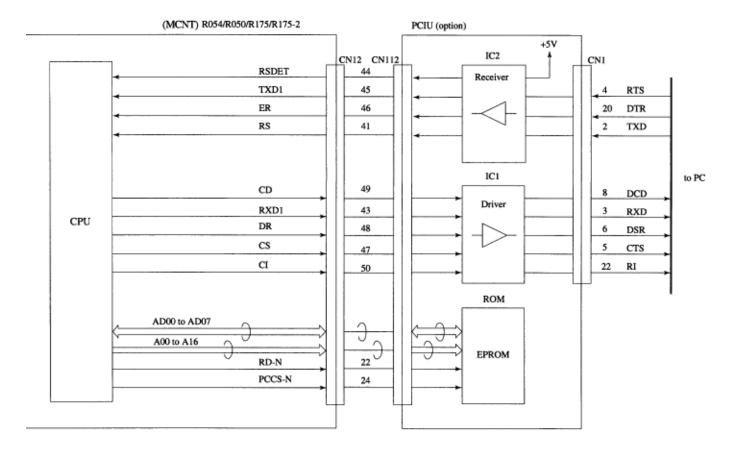


Figure 3.13.1 Block Diagram of P050 (PC interface unit)



#### 3.14 TQSB (Second tray) Circuit Diagram: option

#### **Block diagram**

This board is installed as the optional board for OKIFAX 2350/2450.

Figure 3.14.1 shows a block diagram of the second tray (option).

#### **Function**

Second tray consists of the following functions: Paper capacity: 500 sheets Paper size: A4, Letter, Legal Paper-size selection: Automatic Cassette/no-cassette selection: Automatic Paper/no-paper selection: Automatic Paper route open to facsimile transceiver unit: Automatic decision

Control method: When second tray is installed with the facsimile transceiver unit, the tray is connected to the fac-simile transceiver unit by a connecting cable. The tray is controlled by commands from CPU of the MCNT board.

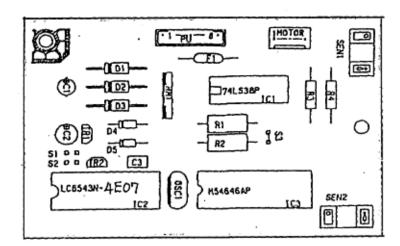


Figure 3.14.1 Block Diagram of the Second Tray (option)

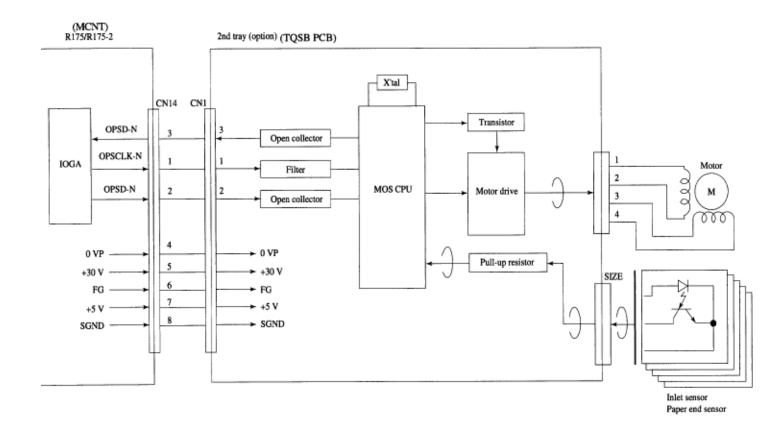


Figure 3.14.1 Block Diagram of 2nd Tray (for OKIFAX 2350/2450)



#### **Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation**

#### **Section 2: Print Operation**

#### 3.15 Mechanical Components

#### 3.15.01 EP drum cartridge

The EP (image) cartridge consists of an EP (image) drum, a charger, and a developer. The cartridge forms a toner image on the drum, using an electrostatic latent image formed by the LED print head.

#### 3.15.02 Registration Stepper motor

This registration stepper motor is a pulse motor of 48 steps/rotation that is two-phase excited by the signal from the R054/R050/R175/R175-2 board. It drives the hopping roller and the registration roller via two one-way clutches according to the direction of rotation.

#### 3.15.03 Main Stepper motor

This main stepper motor is a pulse motor of 48 steps/rotation that is two-phase excited by the signal from the MCNT R054/R050/R175/R175-2 board and is the main motor of this mechanism.

#### 3.15.04 LED head

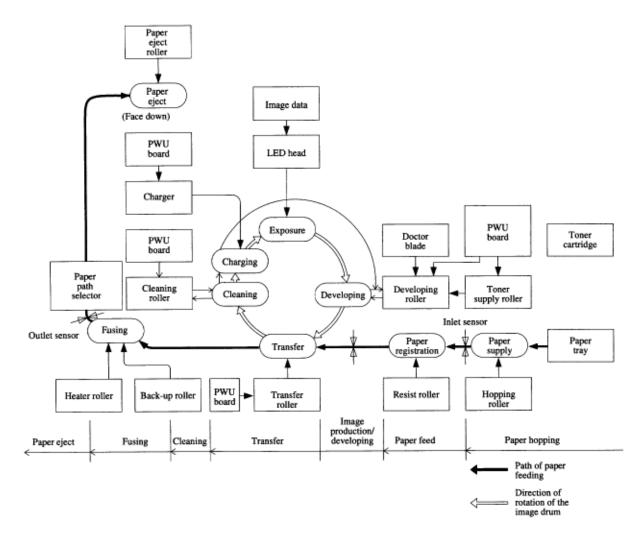
Image data for each dot on a line is transferred from the MCNT R054/R050/R175/R175-2 board, and is received by the shift and latch registers. The 1728 LEDs are driven to radiate the image data on to the EP (image) drum.

#### 3.15.05 Fuser

The fuser consists of a heater, a heat roller, a thermister and a thermostat.

An AC voltage from the power supply board (FXVE/FXVH) is applied to the heater under the control of the HEATON signal from the MCNT R054/R050/R175/R175-2 board. This AC voltage powers the heater. The MCNT R054/R050/R175/R175-2 board supervises the heat roller tempera-ture via the thermistor, and regulates the heater roller at a predetermined temperature (about 160 °C for OKIFAX 1050 and about 185 °C for OKIFAX 2350/2450) by connecting or disconnecting the AC voltage supply to the heater.

If the heater roller temperature rises abnormally, the thermostat of the heater voltage supply circuit is activated to interrupt the AC voltage supply forcibly.

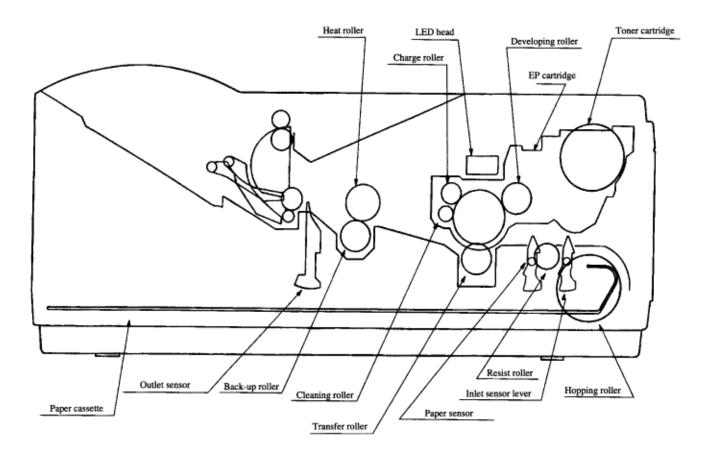


#### **Electrographic Process Flow**



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### **Layout of Print Station Components**



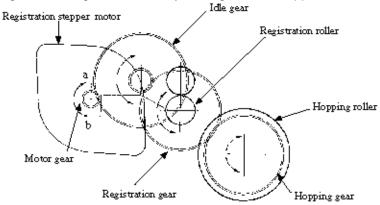


**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### 3.16 Process Operations

#### 3.16.01 Hopping and feeding

Hopping and feeding are affected by the registration stepper motor in the mechanism shown below.

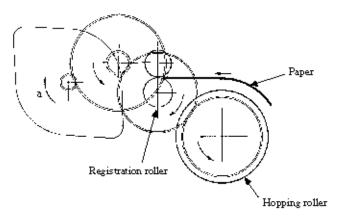


Turning the registration motor in the "a" direction drives the hopping roller. Turning the registration motor in the "b" direction drives the registration roller. The registration gear and hopping gear contain one-way clutch, so that turning each of these gears in reverse direction will not be transmitted to the corresponding roller.

#### **Hopping**

During paper hopping the registration stepper motor turns in the "a" direction (in the clockwise direction) and drives the hopping roller to advance the paper until the inlet sensor turns on. (In this case, the registration gear also turns, but the registration roller is prevented from turning by the one-way clutch gear.)

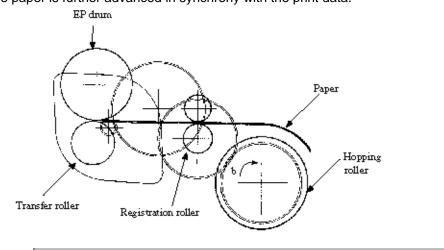
After the paper has turned on the inlet sensor, the paper is further advanced by a predetermined length until the paper hits the registration roller. The brief pause in paper advancement helps to correct skew.



#### Feeding

When hopping is complete, the registration motor tuns in the "b" direction (in the counter clockwise direction) driving the registration roller to advance the paper. (In this case, the hopping gear also turns, but the hopping roller is prevented from turning by the one-way clutch gear.)

The paper is further advanced in synchrony with the print data.

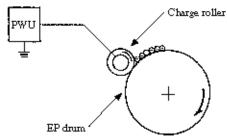




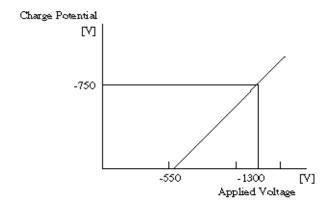
**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### **3.16.02 Charging**

Charging is affected by applying a DC voltage to the charge roller that is in contact with the EP (image) drum surface.



The charge roller is composed of two layers consisting of a conductive layer and a surface protective layer that has elasticity, in order to secure a good contact with the EP (image) drum. When the DC voltage (-1.35 KVDC) applied from the Power Supply Unit exceeds a threshold value, charging begins. The applied voltage is proportional to charge potential with off set of approx. -550V.

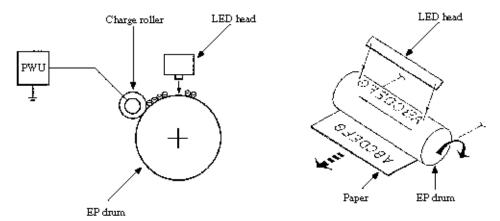




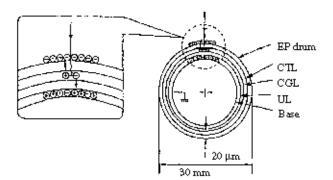
**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### **3.16.03 Exposure**

Light emitted from the LED head irradiates the EP (image) drum surface with negative charges. The surface potential of the irradiated part of the EP drum drops, thereby forming an electrostatic latent image associated with the image signal.



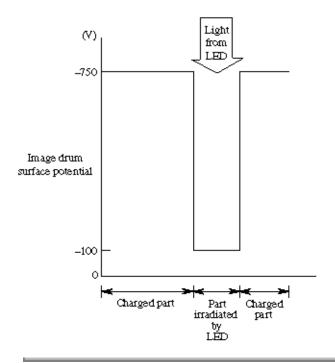
The EP (image) drum is coated with an underlayer (UL), a carrier generation layer (CGL), and carrier transfer layer (CTL) on the aluminum base. The organic photo conductor layer (OPC), comprising a CTL and a CGL, is about 20 mm thick.



The EP (image) drum surface is charged to about -750 V by the contact charge of the charge roller.

When light from the LED head irradiates the EP (image) drum surface, the light energy generates positive and negative carriers in the CGL. The positive carriers are moved to the CTL by an electrical field acting on the EP (image) drum. Likewise, the negative carriers flow into the aluminum layer (ground).

The positive carriers moved to the CTL combine with the negative charges on the EP (image) drum surface accumulated by the contact charge of the charge roller, lowering the potential on the EP (image) drum surface. The resultant drop in the potential of the irradiated part of the EP (image) drum surface forms an electrostatic latent image on it. The irradiated part of the EP (image) drum surface is kept at about -100 V.



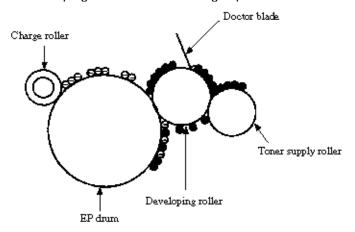
Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



#### 3.16.4 Developing

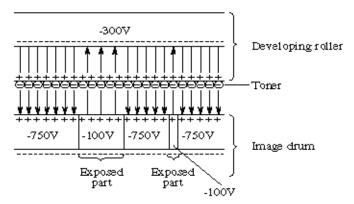
Toner is attracted to the electrostatic latent image on the EP (image) drum surface to convert it into a visible toner image. Developing takes place at the contact between the EP (image) drum and the devel-oping roller.

As the toner supply roller rotates while rubbing on the developing roller, a friction charge is generated between the developing roller and the toner, allowing the toner to be attracted to the developing roller. (The developing roller surface is charges positive and the toner, negative.)

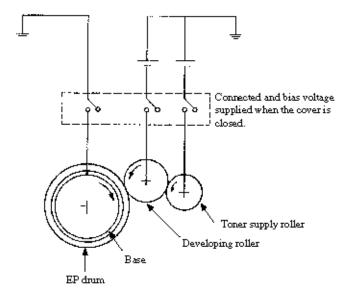


The excess toner attracted to the developing roller is scraped off by the doctor blade, forming a thin coating of toner on the developing roller surface.

Toner is attracted to the exposed part (low-potential part) of the EP (image) drum at the contact between the EP (image) drum and the developing roller, making the electrostatic latent image visible.



An illustration of activities at the contact point of the image drum surface and the developing roller (arrow marks denote the direction of the electric *field*). *Note* The toner supply roller and the developing roller are supplied with bias voltages required during the developing process as shown below. -450 VDC is supplied to the toner supply roller, -300 VDC to the developing roller.





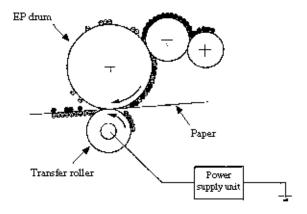
**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### 3.16.05 Transfer

The transfer roller is composed of conductive sponge material and is designed to force the EP (image) drum surface and the paper closely into contact.

Paper is placed over the EP (image) drum surface, and a positive charge, opposite in polarity to the toner, is applied to the paper from its reverse side.

The application of a high positive voltage (+1 KVDC) from the Power Supply Unit (FXVE/FXVH board) to the transfer roller causes the positive charge induced on the transfer roller surface to be transferred to the paper at the contact between the transfer roller and the paper. As a result, toner charged negative that is attracted to the EP (image) drum surface is transferred to the upper side of the paper by the positive charge on the lower side of the paper.



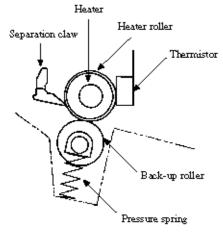


**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### 3.16.06 Fusing

After the end of the transfer operation, the unfused toner image is fused on the paper under heat and pressure as it passes between the heater roller and the back-up roller. The heater roller with a Teflon coating incorporates a 500 W heater (Halogen lamp), which heats the heat roller. A thermister, which is in contact with the heater roller, regulates the heater roller at a predetermined temperature (about 160 °C for OKIFAX 1050 and about 185 °C for OKIFAX 2350/2450). A safety thermostat cuts off voltage supply to the heater by opening the thermostat in the event of abnormal rise in temperature.

The back-up roller is held under a pressure of 2.5 kg by the pressure spring at each side.

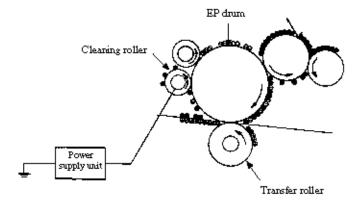




**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

#### 3.16.07 Cleaning

After the end of the transfer, residual toner on the EP (image) drum is attracted to the cleaning roller temporarily by static electricity to clean the EP (image) drum surface.





#### 3.16.08 Cleaning of rollers

The charge roller, transfer roller and cleaning roller are cleaned in the following cases:

- In warning up at power-on time
- In warning up after the cover is opened and closed
- When the number of accumulated sheets is 10 or more and the printout operation ends
- When a cleaning cycle is requested in the technical function local test mode

Changes in bias voltage applied to each roller move adhesive toner from the roller to the EP (image) drum and return it to the developer.

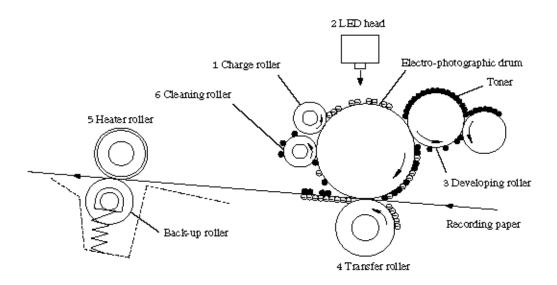
|               | Cleaning "NO" (V) | Cleaning "YES" (V) |
|---------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| DB+           | -                 | +300 V             |
| DB-           | -300 V            | -300 V             |
| TR+           | +1000 V           | +1000 V            |
| TR-           | -                 | -750 V             |
| CB (cleaning) | +400 V            | +400 V             |
| CH-           | -1350 V           | -1350 V            |



#### 3.17 Actual Electo-photographic Process

The electro-photographic process of the OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450 consists of six essential processes.

The following Figure 3.17.1 provides a general description.



#### \* Process:

- 1: Charging
- 2 : Exposure
- 3 : Developing
- 4 : Transfer
- 5: Fusing
- 6: Cleaning

Figure 3.17.1 Actual EP Process



#### **Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation**

#### 3.18 Errors List

The errors are listed below.

#### 3.18.01 Major trouble errors

- Fuser error (printer alarm 4)
- Fan error (printer alarm 3)
- Paper supply error ("LOAD PAPER" advisory message)
- Paper transport system error ("PAPER JAM" error message)
- Paper exit jam ("PAPER JAM" error message)
- Paper size error ("PAPER JAM" error message)
- 2'nd tray communication error (printer alarm 2)
- Cover open ("COVER OPEN" advisory message)

#### 3.18.02 Recoverable errors

- 2'nd tray door open
- No cassette in 2'nd tray
- No paper in 1'st cassette
- No paper in 2'nd cassette

#### 3.18.03 Alarms (warning)

Low toner

#### Note:

- 1. The major trouble errors do not recover after an error has occurred until the problem is corrected.
- 2. A recoverable error resets automatically by itself once the cause of error has been removed. Printing is not possible while an error exists.
- 3. The alarm serves as a warning only and the printing operation is performed.



**Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation** 

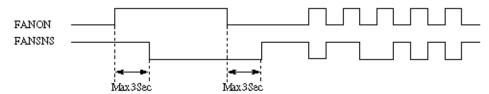
#### 3.19 Major Trouble Errors

#### 3.19.01 Fuser Error

The fuser error indicates an error in thermister on heater. In case the fuser error occurs at the time of printing, the heater is turned off immediately, but the printing continues of that page. However, if the error occurs before the write sensor is turned on, the motors stop.

#### 3.19.02 Fan Error

A fan error is generated when the FANSNS signal lead goes "1" while the fan is running at full speed. Operation of the FANSNS signal when the fan is turned on is described below.

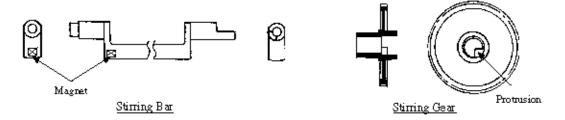


Since the fan alarm is not monitored during printing, the fan alarm does not appear until the completion of printing operation. In other words, the printing will continue even if the fan alarm occurs during printing.

#### 3.19.03 Toner Low Detection

**Composition** The device consists of a stirring gear which rotates at a constant rate, a stirring bar and a magnet on the stirring bar. The stirring bar rotates through the link on a protrusion in the stirring gear.

The configuration of stirring bar in the figure below may differ. The principle of toner detection, however, remains the same.

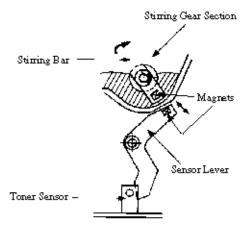


**Operation** Toner Low is detected by monitoring the time interval between the encounter of the magnet set on the sensor lever and the magnet on the stirring bar.

Operation during toner full state

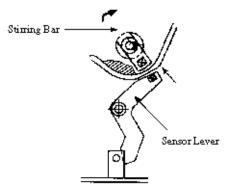
When the stirring bar magnet rotates past the toner sensor magnet, the sensor lever toggles the toner optical sensor on the power supply board.

When the magnet on the stirring bar reaches the maximum height, since the other side is being dipped in the toner, the stirring bar rotates at a constant speed.



#### Operation during toner low state

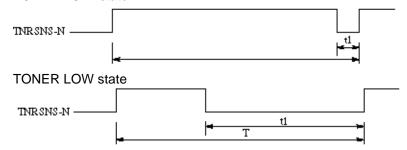
When the stirring bar reaches the maximum height, since there is no resistance provided by the toner on the other side, it falls to the minimum height due to its own weight. Because of this, the time interval during which it is in encounter with the magnet of the sensor lever becomes long. By monitoring this time interval, toner low can be detected.



#### **Low Toner Alarm**

A check for low toner is carried out at all times when the drum is rotating.

• The toner sensor is not monitored while the drum motor is not rotating. TONER FULL state



- When the toner low state is detected 2 times consecutively, Toner Low is established.
- When the toner full state is detected 2 times consecutively, Toner Low is canceled.
- When there is no change with the toner sensor for 2 cycles (6.5 sec. x 2) or more, then the Toner Sensor Alarm is activated.

| Printing Speed | Т | t1 (Toner Exists) | Remarks |
|----------------|---|-------------------|---------|

| 4 ppm | 6.4 sec. | 0.31 ~ 2.00 sec. | OKIFAX 1050      |
|-------|----------|------------------|------------------|
| 8 ppm | 3.2 sec. | 0.16 ~ 1.00 sec. | OKIFAX 2350/2450 |



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

## 3.20 Cleaning

The image drum needs cleaning since it gets dirty after having printed copies for a number of times.

The two kinds of cleaning are listed in the table below:

| Cleaning Type               | Function  | Remarks  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| Image Drum Cleaning         | This cleaning removes excess toner that has accumulated on the Image Drum. The excess toner is removed to the developing roller where it is recycled.               | Cleaning is automatically performed when the number of prints exceed 10 sheets or the one-job operation ends. (At the end of communication or copy operations) |
| CH (charge roller) cleaning | This cleaning removes the residual toner on the charging roller surface. The toner is removed by moving to the recording paper from charging roller and image drum. | Manual operation • Technical function (self test mode)   |



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

#### 3.21 Sensors and Switches

#### 3.21.01 Paper Jam Detection

Paper jam detection monitors the location of paper when the printer is powered ON and during printing. If any of the following jams are present, the printing process is interrupted and the message PAPER JAM will be displayed on the LCD.

To return to the printing process, the paper jam condition MUST be cleared. This is accomplished by opening the upper cover, clearing the jam, and closing the cover.

#### **Paper Outlet Jam**

This jam occurs if, The paper does **NOT** pass over the outlet sensor within a pre-determined period of time, however, the paper has already passed over the paper sensor.

#### **Paper Size Error**

The time interval between when the paper contacts the paper sensor and the outlet sensor determines which size (length) paper is being used.

This error occurs if, The paper size of the loaded paper differs by + 45 mm or more from the paper size set by the menu.

#### **Cover Open Switch**

When the stacker cover is opened, the cover open microswitch on the power supply board (FXUE) is deactivated. This disables the + 38 vdc and the high voltage power supply circuit. As a result, all high voltage outputs are interrupted. At the same time, the CVOPN signal is sent to the main control board (MCNT-150) to notify it of the OFF state of the microswitch. The MCNT-150 executes the cover open routine. The operation panel displays the message COVER OPEN.



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450 Chapter 3 Board Description/Printer Operation

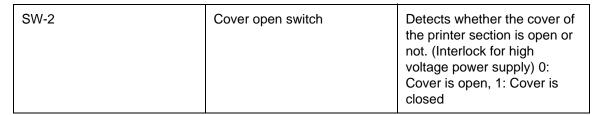
## 3.21.02. Sensors and switch control

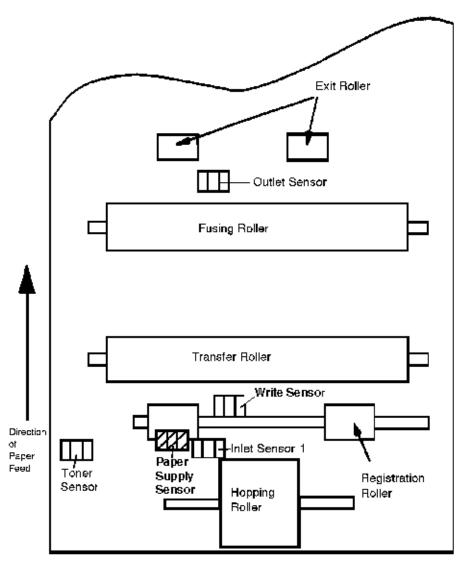
Six types of sensors are used in the printer as listed below. All of their output are processed by the Main Control (MCNT) board.

- Inlet sensor 1
- Write sensor (To detect the paper leading edge for printing)
- Outlet sensor
- Paper end sensor
- Toner end sensor
- Cover status switch

The functions of various sensors are described in the following table

| Sensor | Sensor Name    | Function  |
|--------|----------------|---|
| PS-3   | Inlet sensor 1 | This photosensor is positioned before the registration roller to detect whether the paper has entered into the printer section.   |
| PS-2   | Write sensor   | Detects the arrival of paper at designated position on the paper transport route inside the printer in order to turn on the light of the LED head. 0: Paper exists, 1: Paper does not exist |
| PS-1   | Outlet sensor  | Located at the exit of the printer to supervise the paper exit operation. 0: Paper exists, 1: Paper does not exist  |
| PS-4   | Paper sensor   | Detects the presence of paper in the paper cassette, and presence of cassette. 0: Paper and cassette installed, 1: Paper out, or cassette not installed                                     |
| PS-6   | Toner sensor   | Detects the remaining toner in the toner cartrige.  |





Figuree 3.21.1 Sensor Location (Top View)

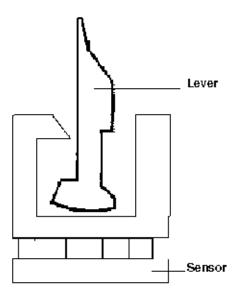


Figure 3.21.2 Detail of Sensor/Lever

**Paper Inlet Jam** This jam occurs when either of the following conditions occur. When the printer is powered ON, paper is at inlet sensor 1. After the hopping operation is attempted three times, the leading edge of the paper does *NOT* reach inlet sensor 1.

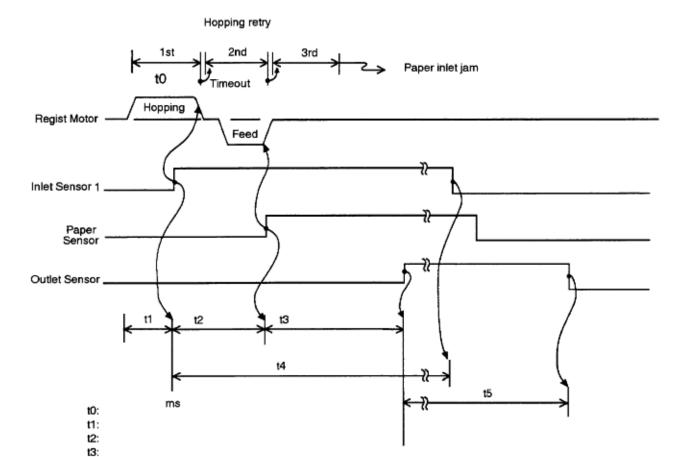


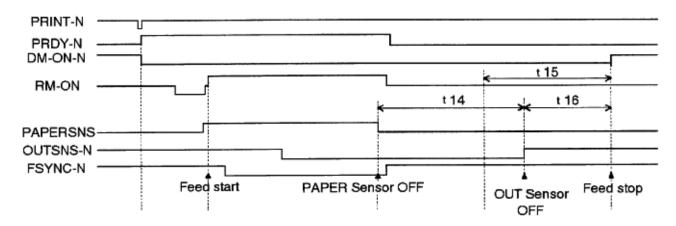
Figure 3.21.1 Paper Inlet Jam

t4:

t5:

**Paper Feed Jam** This jam occurs when either of the following conditions occur. The paper does not pass over the paper sensor within a pre-determined period of time. The leading part of the paper does not reach the outlet sensor within a pre-determined period of time after the paper has passed over the paper sensor.

Figure 3.21.1 Paper Inlet Jam



# Figure 3.21.2 Paper Feed Jam



#### **Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly**

This chapter explains the procedures for replacement of parts in the field.

#### 4.1 General

- 4.1.01 Precautions for Parts Replacement
- 1. Before starting disassembly and reassembly, always turn the AC power switch OFF, and pull out the AC plug.

Note: Unplug the AC power cord from the wall outlet first and then from the facsimile.

- 2. Do not try to disassemble as long as the facsimile is operating normally.
- 3. Do not remove unnecessary parts: Try to keep disassembly to a minimum.
- 4. When disassembling, follow the prescribed sequence. Otherwise, parts may be damaged.
- 5. Since screws and small parts are likely to be lost, they should temporarily be attached to their original positions.
- 6. When handling items such as printed circuit boards, do not wear gloves that are likely to generate static electricity.
- 7. Using a wrist band connected to the ground will protect semiconductors on printed circuit boards from the static electricity.
- 8. Do not place printed circuit boards directly on the equipment or on the floor.



**Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly** 

#### **4.1.2 Tools**

Table 4.1.1 shows the tools required for the replacement of parts such as circuit boards and mechanical units

Table 4.1.1 Tools

| No. | Service bots |                          | ୧୭ | Remails           |
|-----|--------------|--------------------------|----|-------------------|
| 1   |              | Philips screw driver (L) | 1  |                   |
| 2   |              | Philips screw driver (M) | 1  |                   |
| 3   |              | Philips screw driver(\$) | 1  |                   |
| 4   |              | Fixt somew dirivers (5)  | 1  |                   |
| 5   | <del></del>  | Philips screw driver(S)  | 1  |                   |
| 6   |              | Radio pliers             | 1  |                   |
| 7   |              | Nippers                  | 1  |                   |
| 8   |              | Multimeler               | 1  | Short-ciucuit ⊫st |

Page: 148



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly** 

## 4.2 How to Disassemble and Reassemble

This section explains how to disassemble and reassemble the fax.

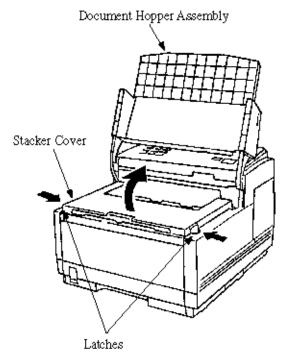


## **Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly**

## 4.2.1 LED Print Head

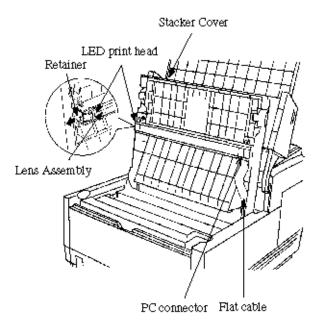
#### (1) Disassembly procedure

- a) Open the Document Table assembly.
- b) Open the Stacker Cover by pressing the latches inward.



- c) Disconnect the flat cable from the PC connector.
- d) Remove the LED print head while spreading the retainer on the Stacker Cover.

*Note:* Be sure not to directly touch or push on the lens of the LED print head.



## (2) Reassembly procedure

Reverse the disassembly procedures.

**Note:** After replacing the LED print head, set drive time of the print head using the adjustment procedure in Chapter 5.

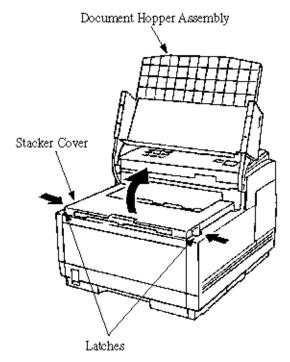


**Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly** 

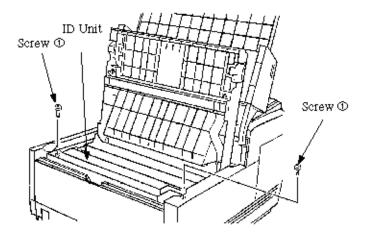
# 4.2.2 Image Drum, Rear Cover, NCU Cover, Main Cover, Separation Plate, NCU Board, Modem Board

#### (1) Disassembly procedure

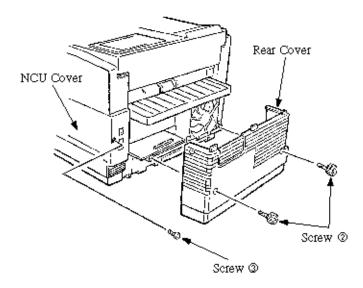
- 1) Image Drum, Rear Cover, NCU Cover, Main Cover
- a) Open the Document Hopper assembly.
- b) Open the stack cover by pressing the latches inward.



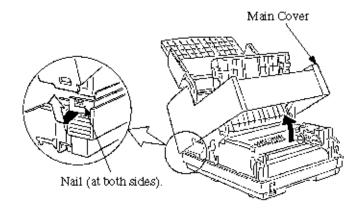
- c) Remove the Image Drum from the equipment.
- d) Remove the two screws (1).



- e) Remove the Rear Cover by remov-ing two screws (2).
- f) Remove the NCU Cover by remov-ing one screw (3).

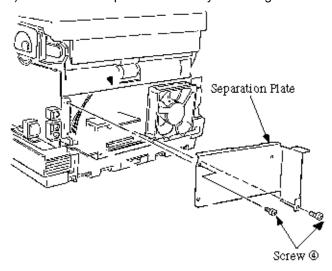


g) First, lift the Main Cover from the front side. Then, remove the Main Cover by pushing it toward the rear to dislodge it from the nails at both sides on the rear side. Continue to lift and remove the cover.



#### 2) Separation Plate

a) Remove the Separation Plate by removing two screws 4.

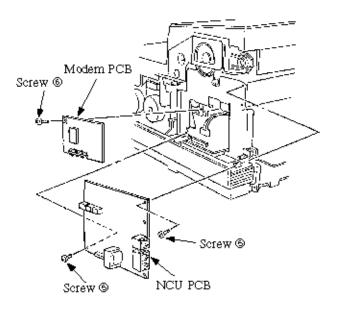


- 3) NCU Board, MODEM Board
- a) Remove the NCU Board by removing two screws 5 . Lift board from its connector.
- b) Remove the MODEM Board by removing one screw 6 . Lift board from its connector.

*Note:* OKIFAX 1050: The modem is part of the MCNT PCB and is not removable.

OKIFAX 2350: 9.6 kbps board standard. 14.4 kbps board is optionally available.

OKIFAX 2450: 14.4 kbps board standard.



## (2) Reassembly procedure

Reverse the disassembly procedures.



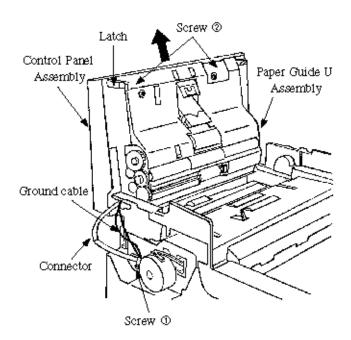
#### **Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly**

#### 4.2.3 Control Panel Assembly, Paper Guide (U) Assembly.

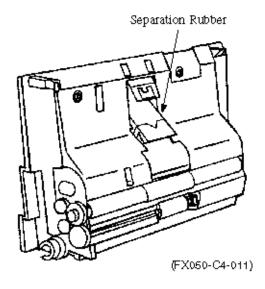
#### (1) Disassembly procedure

- 1) Control Panel Assembly and Paper Guide (U) Assembly
- a) <u>First, carry out the disassembly procedure up to the point of the 4.2.2</u> (Main Cover, NCU Cover, Rear Covers, Separation Plate, NCU Board, and Modem).
- b) Remove the ground cables by removing one screw (1).
- c) Disconnect the Control Panel Connector Cable from the MCNT Board. Carefully remove the cable from its mounting hooks, and remove the ferrite core from the cable. The ferrite core should be saved for reassembly.
- d) Open the Control Panel Assembly as far as possible, then slide it to the right to dislodge it from its hinges. Carefully remove its cable and ground wires from the frame.
- e) To separate the Control Panel Assembly from the Paper Guide U Assembly: Lay the Control Panel Assembly face down, using care not to scratch the panel surface. Remove the two screws that secure the Control Panel Assembly to the Paper Guide U Assembly. Holding the Paper Guide U Assembly by its latches, lift it up and away from the Control Panel Assembly. Disconnect the Control Panel Cable from the OPE Board, and remove it and a ground wire from the Paper Guide U Assembly.

**Note:** The Control Panel Assembly does not include the cable. Save the Control Panel Cable for reassembly. **Note:** During reassembly, use care not to break the 3 mounting tabs. When attaching the Control Panel Assembly to the Paper Guide U, use reverse order of the disassembly procedure.

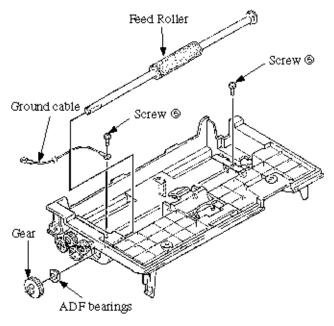


- 2) Paper guide (U) Assembly
- a) Separation Rubber
- a. The Separation Rubber can be removed from the Paper Guide (U) Assembly by lifting it out and away from its mounting tabs.



- b) Feed Roller
- a. Remove the ground cables by removing two screws (5).
- b. Remove the Feed Roller by removing the gear and ADF bearings. Use care to maneuver the roller around the ground plates with as little bending of the plates as possible.

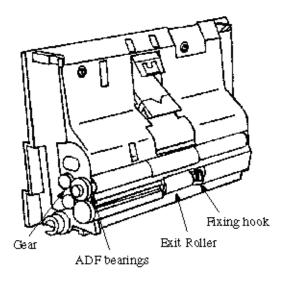
*Note:* Do not remove the ground plates, as they are electrically connected to the static brushes.



c) Scan Roller Remove the Scan Roller by remov-ing the gear and ADF bearing.

d) Exit Roller Remove the Exit Roller while spreading and holding up the fixing hook. The gear end of the shaft is keyed. Be sure to align the key when removing the shaft.

*Note:* Be careful as not to break the shaft of the Exit Roller when removing.



## (2) Reassembly procedure

Reverse the disassembly procedures.

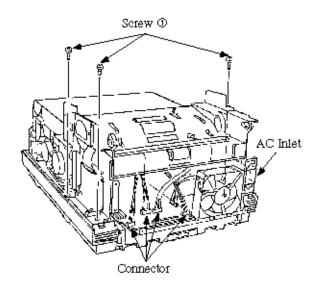


#### **Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly**

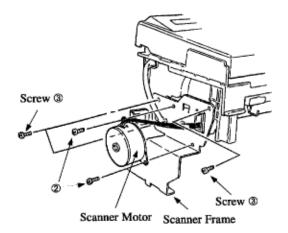
4.2.4 Sub-roller, ADF Roller Assembly, Pinch Roller, Contact Image Sensor, Document Detectors (PC1 and PC2).

#### (1) Disassembly procedure

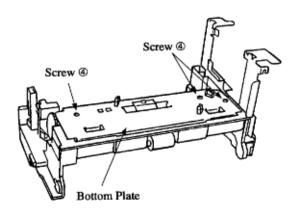
- 1) Scanner Unit
- a) First, carry out the disassembly pro-cedure up to the point of the 4.2.2 (Rear Cover and Main Cover) and 4.2.3 (Control Panel Assembly and Paper Guide (U) Assembly).
- b) Disconnect the connectors from the MCNT Board and slide the AC inlet from the scanner frame. The numbers of connector are shown below:
- OKIFAX 1050: 6 connectors
- OKIFAX 2350: 7 connectors
- OKIFAX 2450: 8 connectors
- c) Remove the Scanner Unit by removing the three screws (1).



- 2) Scanner Motor
- a) Remove the Scanner Motor by removing the two screws (2).



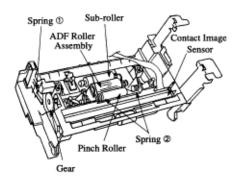
- 3) Scanner Frame
- a) Remove the Scanner Frame by removing the three screws (3).
- 4) Sub-roller, ADF roller assembly, Pinch Roller, Contact Image Sensor
- Turn the Scanner Frame Assembly upside down and perform the disassembly procedure.
- a) Remove the Bottom Plate by removing the three screws (4).



- b) Remove the sub-roller from the Scanner Frame.
- c) Remove the spring (1) from the Scanner Frame.
- d) Remove the ADF Roller Assembly by removing the gear on the Scanner Frame.

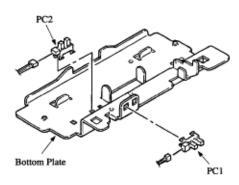
e) After removing the ADF Roller, remove the Pinch Roller by holding up the two springs (2) while the Pinch Roller Shaft is pushed and released.





5) PC1, PC2

a) After disconnecting the two connectors, remove the photocoupler sensors PC1 and PC2 on the Bottom Plate by carefully pressing the latch with a flat screwdrivers.



#### (2) Reassembly procedure

Reverse the disassembly procedure.

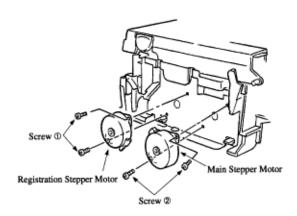


**Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly** 

4.2.5 Registration Stepper Motor, Main Stepper Motor, release Guide Assembly, Eject Roller Assembly, Manual Guide Assembly (only for OKIFAX 2350/2450), Stack Cover, Fusing Unit

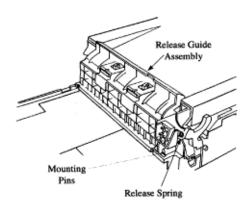
#### (1) Disassembly procedure

- First, carry out the disassembly procedure up to the point of the Scanner Unit Assembly removal (Refer to Sub-section 4.2.4 ).)
- 1) Registration Stepper Motor and Main Stepper Motor
- a) Remove the Registration Stepper Motor by removing the two screws (1), then remove the wire harness connector from the MCNT board.
- b) Remove the Main Stepper Motor by removing the two screws (2), then remove the wire harness connector from the MCNT board.



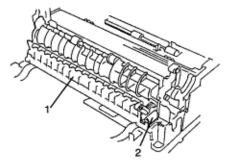
#### 2) Release Guide Assembly (blue)

a) Remove the Release Guide Assembly by removing the Release Spring. Using a flat blade screw driver, carefully pry the mounting pins from the black Eject Roller Assembly.



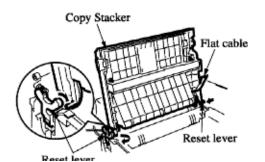
## 2) Eject Roller Assembly (1)

a) Using a flatblade screwdriver, press the latch (2) inward and hold, while lifting the eject roller assembly up and out.



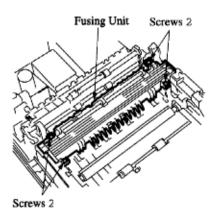
#### 4) Stacker Cover

- a) Open the copy stacker by pushing the buttons.
- b) Disconnect the flat cable from the PC connector. Remove the LED head while spreading the retainer on the Copy Stacker.
- c) Remove the Copy Stacker by pressing inward the two hooks until the copy Stacker is free from the two reset levers.
- d) Remove the Copy Stacker by spreading it from the lower base.

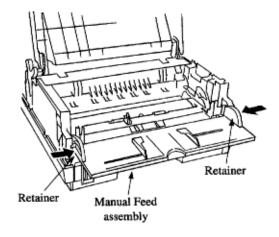


- 5) Fusing Unit
- a) Remove the Fusing Unit by removing the four screws (2).

Note: The Copy Stacker Cover must be removed first.



- 6) Manual Feed Assembly (only OKIFAX 2350/2450)
- a) First, carry out the disassembly procedure up to the point of Main Cover removal. (Refer to sub-section 4.2.2 ).
- b) Remove the Manual Feed Assembly by flexing it down, and then pressing inward on the two retainers.



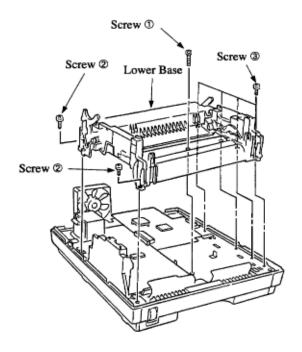


#### **Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly**

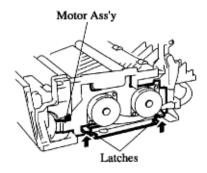
#### 4.2.6 Lower Base, Motor Assembly, Back-up Roller, Transfer Roller, Reset Levers

#### (1) Disassembly procedure

- 1) Lower Base, Motor Assembly
- a) First, carry out the disassembly procedure up to, but not including, the point of the Fusing Unit removal. (Refer to sub-item 4.2.4 ).
- b) Disconnect the two motor connectors, and the LED head connector (CN2, CN3 and CN4 on the MCNT board).
- c) Remove the Lower Base by removing the seven screws (1) to (3). (not all illustrated).
- Two screws securing the Motor Assembly (3).
- Four screws securing each corner of the lower base (2).
- One Screw securing the center of the lower base (3).



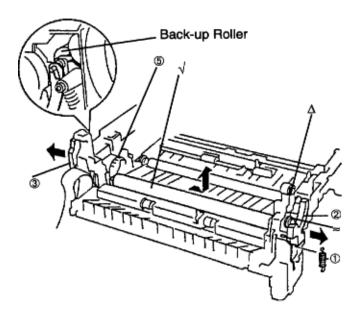
d) Press up and hold the two latches while removing the Motor Assembly out.



2) Back-up Roller, Reset Levers

After removing the Lower Base:

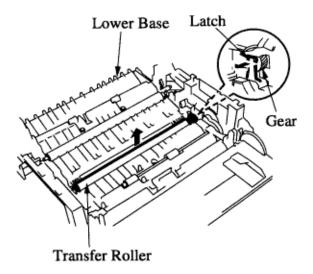
- a) Use a needle nose pliers to remove the stacker cover reset spring (1).
- b) Press down on the back-up (pressure) rollers (4) to release the tension on the left and right reset levers.
- c) Remove the left reset lever (2).
- d) Remove the right reset lever (3).
- e) Lift the back-up (pressure) roller (4) at A and slide it in the direction of arrow B and remove the roller, using care not to lose the bushings, washers or springs.
- f) Remove the fuser roller idle gear (5).
- g) Remove the stacker cover damper gear (6).
- h) Remove the cover open switch arm from the left reset lever.
- i) Remove the stacker cover damper arm (7).



#### 3) Transfer Roller

**Caution:** Do NOT touch the transfer roller! Touching the transfer roller may cause incomplete toner transfer, resulting in faded output.

- a) Use extreme care when lifting the transfer roller. The left bearing will break if too much twist or pressure is applied.
- b) Power OFF the unit and detach the AC power cord.
- c) Remove the image drum cartridge, wedge the blade between the transfer roller gear on the base frame.
- d) Using a flat-blade screwdriver, wedge the blade between the transfer roller gear and the base frame.
- e) Gently pry the transfer gear and roller from the well.
- f) Use the screwdriver to support the transfer roller under its shaft.
- g) Do NOT lift the roller more than an inch to access the gear and bearing.
- h) Remove both the transfer roller gear (1) and bearing.
- i) Remove the transfer roller (2) by sliding it to the right and then out.



# (2) Reassembly procedure

Reverse the disassembly procedures.

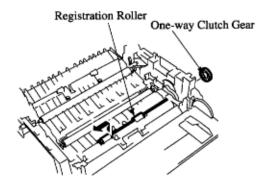


#### **Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly**

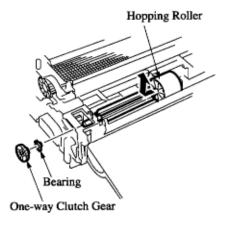
#### 4.2.7 Registration Roller, Hopping Roller, Sensor Plates

#### (1) Disassembly procedure

- 1) Registration Roller, Hopping Roller
- a) First, carry out the disassembly procedure up to the point of the Lower Base removal. (Refer to sub-item 4.2.6 ).
- b) Remove the One-way Clutch Gear.
- c) Press the Registration Roller to the right side and lift up the left side of it, then remove the Registration Roller.



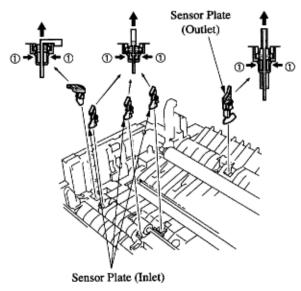
- d) Remove the One-way Clutch Gear and Bearing.
- e) Remove the Hopping Roller by sliding to the right side, and then lifting out.



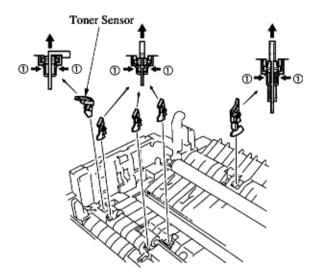
2) Sensor Plates (Inlet, Outlet), Toner Sensor

a) After removing the Lower Base, remove the Sensor Plate by pressing and holding the latches (1) while shifting the Sensor Plate up and out.

Note: The metal "Sensor Wire Assembly" should also be removed when removing the outlet sensor plate.



b) Press and hold the latches (1) while pushing the Toner Sensor up and out.



#### (2) Reassembly procedure

Reverse the disassembly procedures.



#### **Chapter 4 Mechanical Disassembly and Reassembly**

#### 4.2.8 MCNT Board, Power Supply Unit, Contact Assembly, Transformer

#### (1) Disassembly procedure

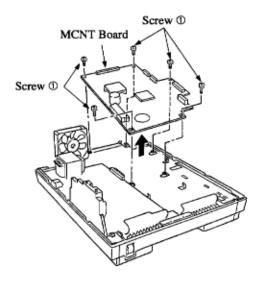
The Main Control PCB (R054/R050, R175, R175-2) and Power Supply Unit can be easily accessed by removing the scanner and printer as whole assemblies. Use the following disassembly procedure.

- 1) Initial steps
- a) First, Remove the Drum, Rear Cover, NCU Cover, Main Cover, Separation Plate, NCU Board and Modem Board (2350/2450). **Refer to sub-section 4.2.3** ...

Note: MCNT board is shown below:

| Okifax 1050 | R054/R050 board |  |
|-------------|-----------------|--|
| Okifax 2350 | R175 board      |  |
| Okifax 2450 | R175-2 board    |  |

- b) Remove the Scanner Unit as a whole assembly by removing its three screws. (Refer to first illustration shown in subsection 4.2.4). Do not remove the Control Panel or Paper Guide U Assemblies.) Then remove the appropriate connectors from the MCNT board.
- c) Remove the printer unit as a whole assembly by removing the seven screws.
- Two screws securing the motor assembly.
- Four screws securing each corner of the lower base assembly.
- One screw securing the center of the lower base assembly.

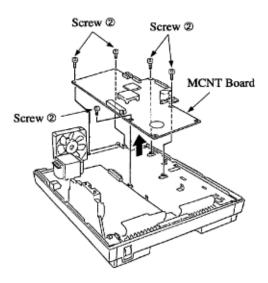


## 2 MCNT board (for OKIFAX 1050)

a) Remove the MCNT Board by removing the five screws (1).

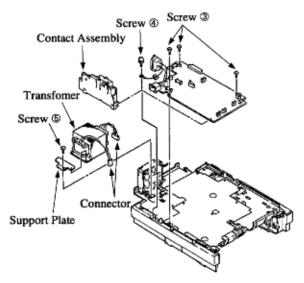
MCNT Board (for OKIFAX 2350/2450)

a) Remove the MCNT Board by removing the five screws (2).



- 3) Power Supply Unit and Contact Assembly
- a) Disconnect the two connectors from the Transformer.
- b) Remove the Power Supply Unit by removing the three screws (3) and the screw (4) on the frame ground wire.
- c) Carefully separate the Power Supply Unit from the Contact Assembly.
- 4) Transformer

- a) Remove the Support Plate by removing one screw (5).
- b) Remove the Transformer by disconnecting the two connectors.



## (2) Reassembly procedure

Reverse the disassembly procedures.



**Chapter 5 Adjustments** 

#### 5.1 Setting of LED Print Head Drive Time

Adjustment point: Technical Functions No. 28 through 31.

\* To access the Technical Function mode, press **SELECT FUNCTION** key once, **COPY** key twice and "2" key (When no messages are in memory).

### Adjustment:

- 1) Turn AC power ON.
- 2) Set the LED print head to the appropriate ranking by following Table 5.1.1 below.
- 3) Intensity ranking is determined by the first, second and third digits from the right in the LED print head serial number (i.e. in S/N ---XX056, 056 is the intensity ranking.) In each row there is a rank marking range (left most column). The ranking printed on the LED head should fall within one of these ranges. After locating the appropriate range, follow the row right to the asterisk column. Follow the asterisk column vertically to see the appropriate technical function settings.
- 4) Set technical functions 28 through 31 according to the recommended values.

Table 5.1.1 Setting of Technical Function No. 28 to 31

| Technical | No. 31   | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
|-----------|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Function  | No. 30   | 0 | ٥ | 1 | 1 | 0 | ٥ | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | ٥ | 1 | 1 |
| Rank      | No. 29   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Marking   | No. 28   | 0 | ٥ | 0 | 0 | 0 | ٥ | ٥ | ٥ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| ~05       | 56       | × |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 057 ~ 06  | 33       |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 064 ~ 07  | 71       |   |   | × |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 072~08    | 30       |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 081 ~ 09  | <b>x</b> |   |   |   |   | × |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 091 ~ 10  | )1       |   |   |   |   |   | × |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 102 ~ 11  | 13       |   |   |   |   |   |   | × |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 114 ~ 12  | 27       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 128 ~ 14  | 13       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | × |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 144 ~ 16  | 50       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | × |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 161 ~ 18  | 90       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | * |   |   |   |   |   |
| 181 ~ 20  | )2       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | × |   |   |   |   |
| 203 ~ 22  | 27       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | × |   |   |   |
| 228 ~ 25  | 56       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | × |   |   |
| 257 ~ 28  | 37       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | × |   |
| 288 ~     |          |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | × |

0: OFF 1: ON

**Note:** When the rank marking of the replaced LED print head (new part) is the same as that of the used LED print head (old part), you do not always have to set the LED print head drive time.



**Chapter 5 Adjustments** 

# **5.2 Power Voltage (Confirmation)**

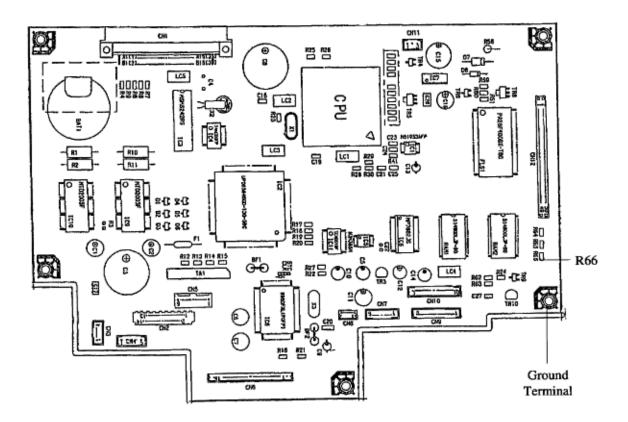
The power voltage of the machine are not adjustable. However, their measurement procedures are described here for the confirmation of each voltage. It is not possible to measure the +8VDC, and +30VDC voltages.

#### 5.2.01 +5VDC Voltage

PC board name: R054/R050 (MCNT) board for OKIFAX 1050, R175 (MCNT) board for OKIFAX 2350 and R175-2 (MCNT) board for OKIFAX 2450. Measurement points: Ground terminal Specification:  $\pm 5V \pm 4\%$  ( $\pm 4.5V \pm 5.2V$ ) Measuring equipment required: Digital voltmeter

#### Measurement

- 1) Turn AC power OFF. 2) Remove the rear cover and optional memory and/or PC Interface boards if installed. 3) Connect the digital voltmeter between the resistor and ground terminal (R66(OKIFAX 1050) or R52 (OKIFAX 2350/2450)). See Figure 5.2.1. 4) Turn AC power ON. 5) Make sure that the meter reads +4.5V to 5.2VDC.
- \* As an example, R054/R050 (MCNT) board of the OKIFAX 1050 is shown below. (Resistor R52 is located in the same area on the OKIFAX 2350/2450 MCNT board.)



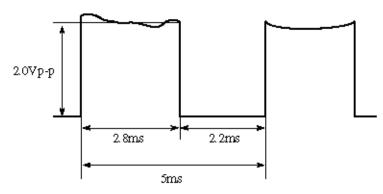
# Figure 5.2.1 +5VDC Measurement Points on MCNT Board



**Chapter 5 Adjustments** 

# **5.3 Contact Image Sensor Output Check (Confirmation)**

PC board name: R054/R050 (MCNT) board for OKIFAX 1050, R175 (MCNT) board for OKIFAX 2350 and R175-2 (MCNT) board for OKIFAX 2450. Measurement points: SIG signal, CN10-1 pin and ground terminal Specification: A waveform sample is shown below. (For FX-050) Measuring equipment required: Oscilloscope



As an example, the (MCNT) board of the OKIFAX 1050 is shown below.

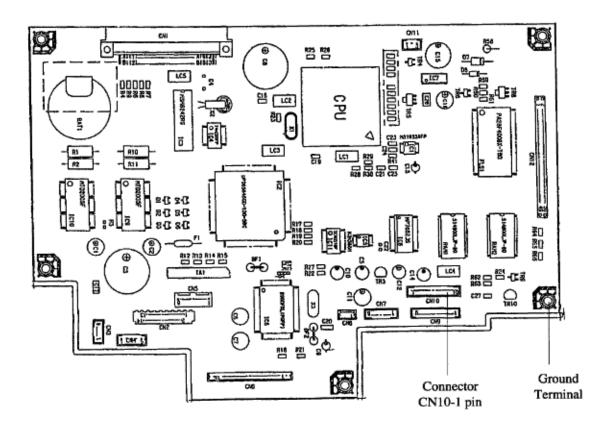


Figure 5.3.1 SIG Signal Measurement Points on MCNT Board



# **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

# **6.1 Replacement of Consumable Parts**

The user (or service personnel) is required to replace the following items as consumable parts.

# 6.1.01 User side

| No. | Part name                        | Expected Use Before Replacement  | Reference<br>Item No.<br>in Fig.6.1.1 |
|-----|----------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1   | Toner Cartridge                  | 1200 sheets (ITU-T document sample No. 1) (For the first toner cartridge to a new I/D Unit) 2500 sheets (ITU-T document sample No.1) (For the second or later cartridge to a new I/D Unit) | (1)                                   |
| 2   | I/D Unit<br>(Image drum<br>unit) | Up to 20,000 pages   | (2)                                   |

# 6.1.02 Service personnel side

| No. | Part name         | Expected Use Before Replacement | Reference<br>Item No.<br>in<br>Fig.6.2.1 |
|-----|-------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| 1   | Fuser Unit        | 180,000 printed pages           | (3)                                      |
| 2   | Separation Rubber | Up to 30,000 documents fed      | (4)                                      |

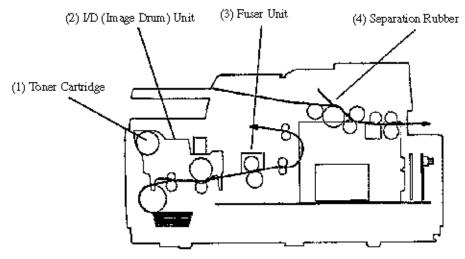


Figure 6.1.1 Consumable Parts

# 6.1.03 Others

# Table 6.1.1 Reliability

| No. | Item                                    | Specifications  |
|-----|---|---|
| 1   | Document feeder                         | Jam occurrence and misfeeds in the automatic document feeder will be less than one in 500 operations for all specified documents.   |
| 2   | Recording paper feeder                  | Jam occurrence in the automatic paper feeder will be less than one in 1,500 operations and misfeeds will be less than one in 500 operations for all specified recording paper.  |
| 3   | Lithium Battery<br>(system data backup) | The lithium battery is mounted on the MCNT board, and is not field replacable. The battery life is up to five years, and is not rechargeable.   |
| 4   | NiCad Battery (Image Data<br>Backup)    | OKIFAX 2450 only. In the event of a power outage, the NiCad battery will retain the image data for a minimum of one hour. Observe the caution below for replacement. Okidata recommends the use of part #56306901 for replacement.              |
| 5   | MTBF                                    | The MTBF for the overall machine will exceed 3,000 hours of actual operation. The MTBF will be measured at a confidence level of 95% under controlled laboratory conditions. The MTBF will be based on 50% transmit and 50% receive activities. |

# CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.

Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.

Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.



# **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

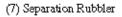
# **6.2 Preventative Maintenance**

Preventative maintenance of the following items should be performed semi-annually after the machine is installed (or whenever the machine requires service). The description of preventative maintenance is shown in Table 6.2.1.

**Table 6.2.1 Preventative Maintenance** 

| No. | Part Name                   | Procedure   | Reference Item<br>No.<br>In Fig. 6.2.1 |
|-----|-----------------------------|---|--|
| 1   | Scan Roller                 | Clean with water.   | (1)                                    |
| 2   | Feed Rollers No. 1 and No.2 | Clean with water. If the surface of these rollers becomes dirty, the dirt could cause the transmitted image or the local copied image to expand vertically. Perform this cleaning as necessary. | (2)                                    |
| 3   | Sub Roller                  | Clean with water.   | (3)                                    |
| 4   | Pinch Rollers               | Clean with ethyl alcohol.   | (4)                                    |
| 5   | ADF Roller                  | Clean with water. If the surface of this roller becomes dirty, the dirt could cause misfeeding of documents. Perform this cleaning as necessary.  | (5)                                    |
| 6   | Contact Image Sensor        | Check for accumulation of paper dust, etc. Clean with ethyl alcohol if necessary.   | (6)                                    |
| 7   | Separation Rubber           | Clean with water. If this rubber is worn out, replace it. Otherwise replace once a year.  | (7)                                    |
| 8   | LED print head              | Clean the surface of the head by moving an optical cleaning tissue back and forth several times.  | (8)                                    |
| 9   | Printer unit                | Vacuum any toner or dust accumulation. Clean the inside of the printer unit by using a cloth dampened with cold water, if necessary. Dry completely.  |  |

| 10  | Lubrication     | Lubrication should take place once a year, or as necessary. Use Dow Corning Molycoat BR-2 grease or equivalent. Use grease sparingly. Lubricate gears and reset lever channels. Do not allow lubricant to contact the surface of any rollers or paper guides.  10 Lubrication |     |
|-----|-----------------|---|-----|
| 11  | Cleaning        | Clean the machine's covers with mild soap on a cloth dampened with cold water. Dry completely. <i>Note:</i> Always disconnect the machine from power before cleaning.   | (9) |
| 12. | Optical sensors | Vacuum any dust accumulation from both ADF and power supply optical sensors as necessary.   |     |



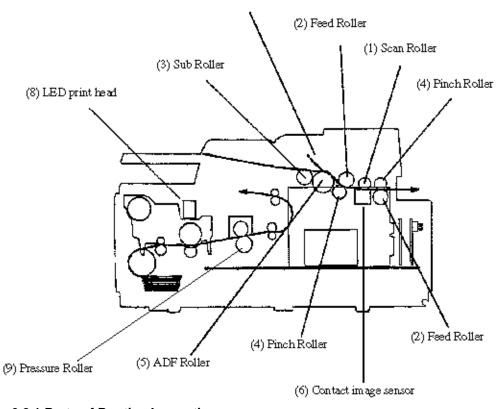


Figure 6.2.1 Parts of Routine Inspection



#### **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

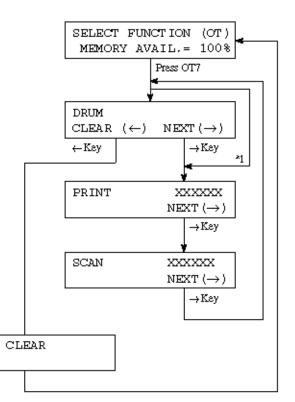
# 6.3 Printer Counter Display/Clear

- 6.3.01 Purpose A user can clear the image drum unit count and check some of the other counters (such as the print counter, scan counter) by using the ¬ key or ® key.
- 6.3.02 Procedure The following shows the case when the service bit has been set OFF.

Note: Clear Operation

### Operations:

- To display the printer counters, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No.7 in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Press the ← key or the → key.
- \*1: If the drum does not reach its life span.



The display shows:

User can clear only DRUM counter. When the drum has reached its life span, LCD shows REPLACE I/D Unit. After having cleared the drum counter, warning message will be disappeared.



#### **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

# 6.4 Printer Counter Display/Clear

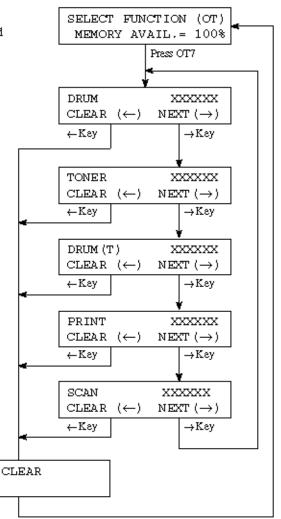
- 6.4.01 Purpose The service personnel can clear and check the following counters: Image Drum Toner Image Drum (Total) Print Scan
- 6.4.02 Procedure The following shows the case when the service bit has been set ON.

Note: DRUM (T) will be used to know the total in-use life (printed page count) of the machine.

#### Operations:

### The display shows:

- To perform a printer counter clear, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and one-touch key No. 7 in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Press the ← key or the → key.





#### **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

# 6.5 Self-diagnosis Test

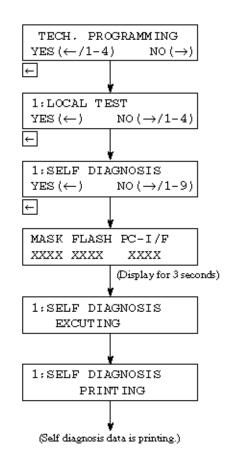
- 6.5.01 Purpose To check ROMs, RAMs and printing function.
- 6.5.02 Procedure

# Operations:

- To perform a self-diagnostic test, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and the COPY key twice in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Press the ← key.
- Press the ← key.
- Press the ← key to activate self-diagnosis.
   PC-I/F appears with PC-I/F board.

(Figure 6.5.1 shows the printed data.)

# The display shows:



Test report will be automatically printed out with the following items:

### **OKIFAX 1050**

| a) | Pattern 1 | Stair pattern (32 lines in each step)                          |
|----|-----------|--|
| b) | Pattern 2 | All black (32 lines)   |
| c) | Pattern 3 | Alternate printing of black dots and white dots (32 lines x 2) |

| d) | CPU-ROM VERSION       | In case CPU-ROM is good.  | HASH OK            |
|----|-----------------------|---|--------------------|
|    | CPU-ROM               | In case CPU-ROM is not good.  | HASH NG            |
|    | CPU-RAM               | In case CPU-RAM is good.<br>In case CPU-RAM is not good.                            | OK<br>NG           |
| e) | FLASH VERSION<br>FLS1 | In case FLS1 is good. In case FLS1 is not good.                                     | HASH OK<br>HASH NG |
| f) | FLASH VERSION         | In case LANGUAGE is good.   | HASH OK            |
|    | LANGUAGE              | In case LANGUAGE is not good.   | HASH NG            |
| g) | DEFAULT VERSION       | In case DEFAULT is good.  | HASH OK            |
|    | DEFAULT               | In case DEFAULT is not good.  | HASH NG            |
| h) | RAM1<br>RAM2          | In case RAMi is good.<br>In case RAMi is not good.<br>("i" is RAM's number)         | OK<br>NG           |
| i) | OPT-RAM1<br>OPT-RAM2  | In case OPT-RAMi is good.<br>In case OPT-RAMi is not good.<br>("i" is RAM's number) | OK<br>NG           |
| j) | PC-I/F VERSION        | In case PC-I/F is good.   | HASH OK            |
|    | PC-I/F                | In case PC-I/F is not good.   | HASH NG            |

Figure 6.5.1 shows a printed sample.

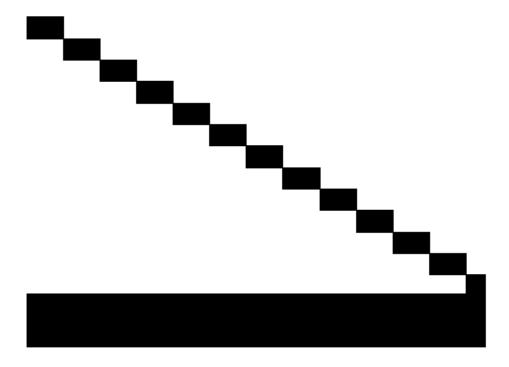
Test report will be automatically printed out with the following items:

# OKIFAX 2350/2450

| a) | Pattern 1                  | Stair pattern (32 lines in each step)                          |                    |
|----|----------------------------|--|--------------------|
| b) | Pattern 2                  | All black (32 lines)   |                    |
| c) | Pattern 3                  | Alternate printing of black dots and white dots (32 lines x 2) |                    |
| d) | CPU-ROM VERSION<br>CPU-ROM | In case CPU-ROM is good.<br>In case CPU-ROM is not good.       | HASH OK<br>HASH NG |
|    | CPU-RAM                    | In case CPU-RAM is good.<br>In case CPU-RAM is not good.       | OK<br>NG           |
| e) | FLASH VERSION<br>FLS1      | In case FLS1 is good.  | HASH OK            |

| f) | FLASH VERSION<br>LANGUAGE                    | In case LANGUAGE is good.<br>In case LANGUAGE is not good.                          | HASH OK<br>HASH NG |
|----|--|---|--------------------|
| g) | DEFAULT VERSION<br>DEFAULT                   | In case DEFAULT is good. In case DEFAULT is not good.                               | HASH OK<br>HASH NG |
| h) | RAM1<br>RAM2<br>RAM3                         | In case RAMi is good.<br>In case RAMi is not good.<br>("i" is RAM's number)         | OK<br>NG           |
| i) | OPT-RAM1<br>OPT-RAM2<br>OPT-RAM3<br>OPT-RAM4 | In case OPT-RAMi is good.<br>In case OPT-RAMi is not good.<br>("i" is RAM's number) | OK<br>NG           |
| j) | PC-I/F VERSION<br>PC-I/F                     | In case PC-I/F is good. In case PC-I/F is not good.                                 | HASH OK<br>HASH NG |

Figure 6.5.1 shows a printed sample.



| CPU-ROM | VERSION | Z106 |      |
|---------|---------|------|------|
|         | HASH    | OK   | 9CE1 |
| CPU-ROM |         |      |      |
| FLASH   | VERSION | AA1  |      |
| FLS1    | HASH    | OK   | 27F4 |

| LANGUAGE | VERSION | EG10 |      |  |
|----------|---------|------|------|--|
|          | HASH    | OK   | 4C38 |  |
| DEFAULT  | VERSION | AD02 |      |  |
| RAM1     | HASH    | OK   | F0FF |  |
| RAM2     |         | OK   |      |  |
| RAM3     |         | OK   | *1   | *1 marked items are not printed for the OKIFAX 1050. |
| OPT-RAM1 |         | OK   | *2   |  |
| OPT-RAM2 |         | OK   | *2   | *2 marked items are optional.                        |
| OPT-RAM3 |         | OK   | *2   |  |
| OPT-RAM4 |         | OK   | *2   |  |
| PC-I/F   | VERSION | PP01 | *2   |  |
|          | HASH    | OK   | 1507 |  |

Figure 6.5.1 Self-diagnosis Data



# **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

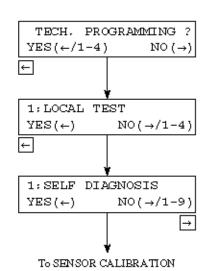
# **6.6 Sensor Calibration Test**

6.6.01 Purpose To adjust the linearity of output levels of contact image sensor.

### Operations:

- To perform a sensor calibration test, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and the COPY key twice in the standby mode. (If no message is in memory)
- Press the ← key.
- Press the ← key.
- Press the → key to activate self-diagnosis.

### The display shows:



# Operations:

# The display shows:

Enter "2".

Press the ← key.

 Load document(s).
 For adjustment of levels, use NA Letter-size, plain, white bond paper.

- Press the ← key.
- Observe and check the document feed operation.

Check that the following do not occur:

Document skew.
Multiple document feeding.

No feeding.

Continued from the previous page 1:SELF DIAGNOSIS YES (←)  $NO(\rightarrow/1-9)$ 2 2:SENSOR CALIBRATION YES (←)  $NO(\rightarrow/1-9)$ 2:SENSOR CALIBRATION PLEASE SET DOCUMENT Set white document. 2:SENSOR CALIBRAION CALIBRATING OK RESULT=OK After 1 sec. DOCUMENT REMOVAL End of document feed.

*Note:* After adjustment of levels, check the copy quality by copying test charts or documents.



### **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

#### 6.7 LED Test

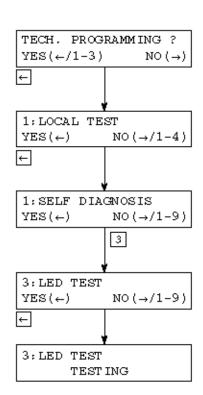
6.7.01 Purpose To check all LEDs on operation panel by lighting.

#### 6.7.02 Procedure

#### Operations:

- To perform an LED test, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once and the COPY key twice in the standby mode.
   (If no message is in memory)
- Press the ← key.
- Press the ← key.
- Enter "3".
- Press the ← key.
- Observe and check that LEDs are blinking.
   All LEDs will be sequentially turned on for one second in the following order.

# The display shows:



(Start)

$$\rightarrow$$
 ALARM  $\rightarrow$  DARK  $\rightarrow$  NORMAL  $\rightarrow$  LIGHT  $\rightarrow$  STD  $\rightarrow$  FINE  $\rightarrow$  1 second interval.

After the checking, press the STOP key.



# **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

#### **6.8 Tone Send Test**

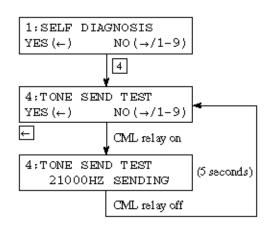
6.8.01 Purpose To send G3 tonal frequencies through the phone line for remote testing.

6.8.02 Procedure

#### Operations:

- To perform a tone send test, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once, the COPY key twice and the ← key twice. (If no message is in memory)
- Enter "4".
- Press the ← key.
- After the test, press the STOP key or end the transmission.

# The display shows:





#### **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

# 6.9 High-speed Modem Send Test

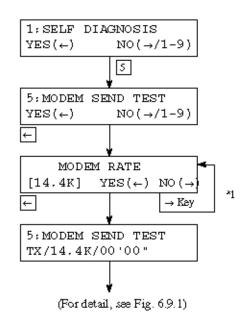
6.9.01 Purpose To check the telephone line quality in combination with a remote station programmed to the high-speed modem receive test mode.

6.9.02 Procedure

#### Operations:

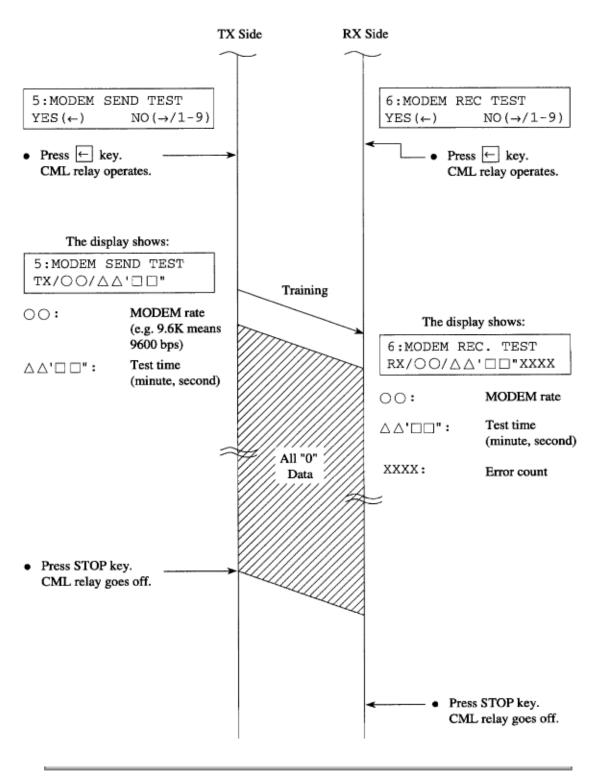
- To perform a high-speed modify send test, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once, the COPY key twice and the ← key twice.
   (If no message is in memory)
- Enter "5".
- Press the ← key.
- Set MODEM rate with the → key.
- Press the ← key.
   All zero data will be continuously sent.
- After the test, press the STOP key.

# The display shows:



\*1: 
$$\rightarrow$$
 14.4K  $\rightarrow$  12.0K  $\rightarrow$  9.6KT(V.17)  $\rightarrow$  7.2KT(V.17)  $\rightarrow$  9.6K(V.29)  $\rightarrow$  7.2K(V.29)  $\rightarrow$  0.3K  $\leftarrow$  2.4K  $\leftarrow$  4.8K

14.4K, 12.0K, 9.6KT (V.17) and 7.2KT (V.17) are skipped for the MODEM without 14.4kps function.



Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



# **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

#### 6.10 High-speed Modem Receive Test

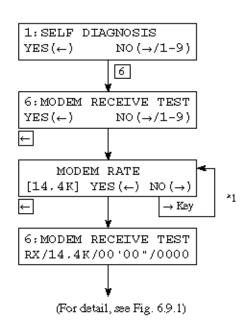
6.10.01 Purpose To check the telephone line quality in combination with a remote station programmed to the high-speed modem send test mode.

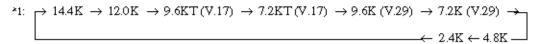
6.10.02 Procedure

#### Operations:

- To perform a high-speed modern receive test, press the SELECTFUNCTION key once, the COPY key twice and the ← key twice. (If no message is in memory)
- Enter 6.
- Press the ← key.
- Set MODEM rate by the → key.
- Press the ← key.
- After the test, press the STOP key.

#### The display shows:





 $14.4K,\,12.0K,\,9.6KT\,(V.17)$  and  $7.2KT\,(V.17)$  are skipped for the MODEM without 14.4kps function



#### **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

#### 6.11 MF Send Test

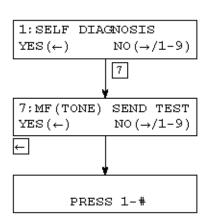
6.11.01 Purpose To send the multi-frequencies of tone dialing to the line.

6.11.02 Procedure

#### Operations:

- To perform an MF send test, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once, the COPY key twice and the ← key twice. (If no message is in memory)
- Enter 7.
- Press the ← key.
- Press 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 0, \* or the # key.
   MF tone corresponding to the key pressed will be sent until the next key is pressed.
- After the test, press the STOP key.
   Frequencies of MF tone are as follows:
  - 697 Hz/1209 Hz 697 Hz/1366 Hz 2 3 697 Hz/1477 Hz 4 770 Hz/1209 Hz 5 770 Hz/1366 Hz 6 770 Hz/1477 Hz 7 852 Hz/1209 Hz 8 852 Hz/1366 Hz 9 852 Hz/1477 Hz 941 Hz/1366 Hz 0 941 Hz/1209 Hz 941 Hz/1477 Hz

# The display shows:





#### **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

# 6.12 Tone (TEL/FAX)

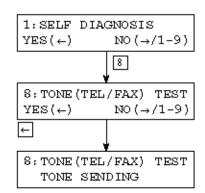
6.12.01 Purpose To check the pseudo-ring back tone of TEL/FAX automatic switching.

6.12.02 Procedure

# Operations:

- To perfrom a tone (TEL/FAX) test, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once, the COPY key twice and the ← key twice. (If no message is in memory)
- Enter 8.
- Press the ← key.
- After the test, press the STOP key.

# The display shows:





# **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

# 6.13 Printer Cleaning

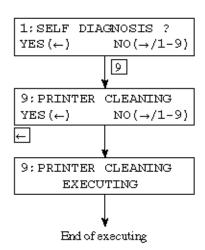
6.13.01 Purpose This drum cleaning function removes the residual toner on the I/D (Image Drum) Unit surface. A printed page will carry the residual toner from the machine. This cleaning should be performed when print quality becomes questionable.

6.13.02 Procedure

#### Operations:

- To execute a printer cleaning cycle, press the SELECT FUNCTION key once, the COPY key twice and the ← key twice.
- Enter 9.
   In case of "No Paper" or "Cover
   Open" errors, the machine returns to standby state after 3 seconds.
- Press the ← key.

#### The display shows:



Page: 173



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

# **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

# 6.14 Protocol Dump Data Printing

6.14.01 Purpose To analyze the transmitted/received G3 protocol signals. This data is useful when troubleshooting communications problems.



# **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

#### 6.14.02 Procedure

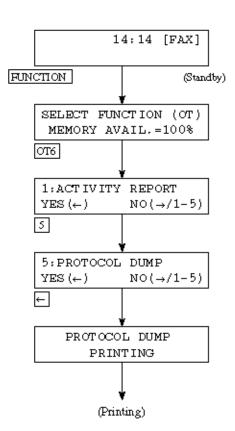
Manual print-out of the last communication.

*Note:* The service bit (TF#1) must be ON to enable the Protocol Dump Report.

# Operations:

# The display shows:

- Press the SELECT FUNCTION key
- Press one-touch key No.6
- Enter 5.
- Press the ← key.



Page: 175



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance** 

# 6.14.03 Dump data description

Data sample Figure shows the printed data as a sample.

#### PROTOCOL DUMP

05/19/95 09:21 ID=OKI SHIBAURA

DISTANT STATION ID MODE PAGES RESULT DATA TIME S,R-TIME OKI DATA CORP. CALLING 01 OK 0000 09:16 00'46" 05/19 FCF C2 C4 FD F4 DF TXRX 04 02 01 21 31 TXRX DTC TX00 00 00 00 00 00 00 DIS 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 DCS 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 NSF FF CB C4 00 00 84 80 15 80 C4 40 B9 39 20 0C 0C 0C 0C 80 40 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 NSC ŘХ DIS DSC NSF FF CO 04 00 00 84 80 20 40 C6 DC C0 FB 7D 87 20 0C 0C 0C 80 20 40 82 80 10 FE 80 C0 E0 17 C0 NSS RECEIVED CSI/CIG/TSI TRANSMITTED CSI/CIG/TSI 

Figure 6.14.1 Protocol Dump Data (Sample: at transmitter side)

Page: 176



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance** 

# 6.14.04 Analysis from the data

The printed out data permits to analyze G3 facsimile communication protocol signals between two facsimile machines. Figure 6.14.2 shows the result of an analysis on the printed data referring to Figure 6.14.1 (Protocol dump data).

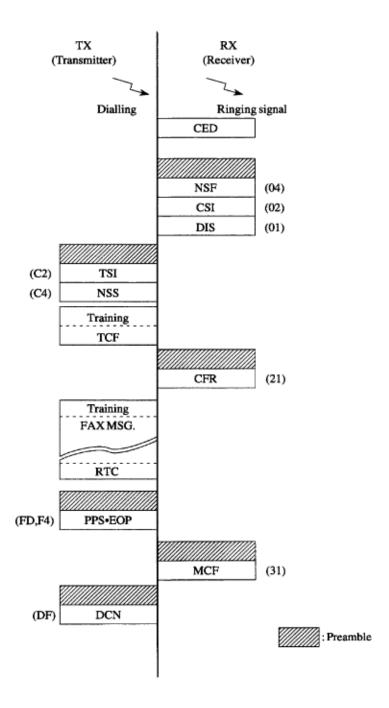


Figure 6.14.2 Result of Analysis (Example)



# **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

# 6.14.05 FCF (Facsimile Control Field) conversion table

Table 6.14.1 shows all FCF signals which are needed to analyze the printed out protocol dump data.

Some signals have two different hexadecimal codes in accordance with the calling party or called party.

**Table 6.14.1 FCF Signals Conversion Table** 

| Abbreviation | Hex. Codes | Description of function                |
|--------------|------------|--|
| NSF          | 04         | Non-Standard Facilities                |
| CSI          | 02         | Called Subscriber Identification       |
| DIS          | 01         | Digital Identification Signal          |
| NSC          | 84         | Non-Standard Facilities Command        |
| CIG          | 82         | Calling Subscriber Identification      |
| DTC          | 81         | Digital Transmit Command               |
| NSS          | 44 C4      | Non-Standard Set-Up                    |
| TSI          | 42 C2      | Transmitting Subscriber Identification |
| DCS          | 41 C1      | Digital Command Signal                 |
| CFR          | 21 A1      | Confirmation to Receive                |
| MCF          | 31 B1      | Message Confirmation                   |
| FTT          | 22 A2      | Failure to Train                       |
| MPS          | 72 F2      | Multi-Page Signal                      |
| EOM          | 71 F1      | End of Message                         |
| EOP          | 74 F4      | End of Procedure                       |
| RTP          | 33 B3      | Retrain Positive                       |
| RTN          | 32 B2      | Retrain Negative                       |
| PIP          | 35 B5      | Procedure Interrupt Positive           |
| PIN          | 34 B4      | Procedure Interrupt Negative           |
| PRI-MPS      | 7A FA      | Procedure Interrupt-MPS                |
| PRI-EOM      | 79 F9      | Procedure Interrupt-EOM                |

| PRI-EOP | 7C FC | Procedure Interrupt-EOP            |
|---------|-------|------------------------------------|
| DCN     | 5F DF | Disconnect                         |
| CRP     | 58 D8 | Command Repeat                     |
| СТС     | 48 C8 | Continue to Correct                |
| CTR     | 23 A3 | Response to Continue to Correct    |
| EOR     | 73 F3 | End of Retransmission              |
| ERR     | 38 B8 | Response to End of Retransmission  |
| FCD     | 60    | Facsimile Coded Data               |
| PPS     | 7D FD | Partial Page Signal                |
| PPR     | 3D BD | Partial Page Request               |
| RCP     | 61    | Return to Control for Partial Page |
| RNR     | 37 B7 | Receiver not Ready                 |
| RR      | 76 F6 | Receiver Ready                     |



#### **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

#### 6.15 System Reset

6.15.01 Purpose

To clear or initialize the following data: (a) Location data (b) Configuration data (default)

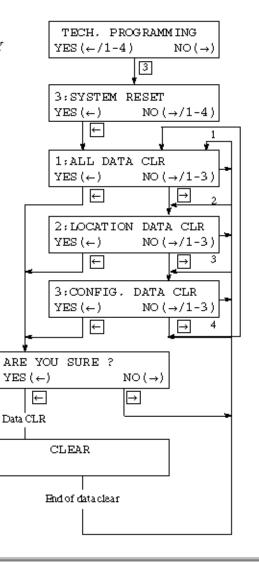
6.15.02 Procedure

#### Operations:

- To perform a system reset,
  press the SELECT FUNCTION key, the COPY
  key twice, the ← key and the → key.
  (If no message is in memory)
- Enter 3.

Note: ALL DATA CLEAR will initialize both location data and configuration data. Before performing an ALL DATA CLEAR, be sure to print a copy of the current configuration, when possible, to use as a reference.

### The display shows:



Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



### **Chapter 6 Cleaning and Maintenance**

#### 6.16 Service Code

- 6.16.01 The service code can be printed on Activity Report to recognize the result of each communication.
- 6.16.02 The activity report indicates the code 0000", should a communication terminates on normal status as a service code.
- 6.16.03 The activity report indicates one of the codes of 90XX, should a communication terminates on abnormal status, as an error code.
- 6.16.04 Besides the above codes of 90XX, the following codes are prepared for identifying an abnormal status in details.
- -21XX: For error codes in Group 3 transmission phase B
- -29XX: For error codes in Group 3 reception phase B
- -39XX: For error codes in Group 3 reception phase C
- -41XX: For error codes in Group 3 transmission phase D
- -49XX: For error codes in Group 3 reception phase D

#### Table 4.16.1 (1/2) Service Code List

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 0000 | Successful end of communication.  |
| 1080 | STOP key has been pressed while calling a remote fax.                         |
| 10A2 | Busy tone detected.   |
| 14C0 | Dial tone not detected.   |
| 14C1 | Line current not detected.  |
| 14C2 | Calling-and-waiting for line connection time out.                             |
| 14C3 | Dialing limit time out.   |
| 21A0 | Received signal other than DIS/DTC.   |
| 21A1 | Contents of received DIS/DTC are faulty.                                      |
| 21A3 | Each time there is no response from the receiver for sending TCF three times. |
| 21A4 | TCF fall back is not possible.  |
| 21A5 | Received signal other than the desired signal in response to sending TCF.     |

|      | <u> </u>   |
|------|--|
| 21B0 | Transmitter tried to transmit by confidential transmission function but the remote fax has not the capability of confidential reception. |
| 21B1 | Transmitter tried to transmit by Broadcast Initiate function but the remote fax has not the broadcast capabil-ity.                       |
| 21C0 | In Closed Network setting, TSI/CIG/CSI is either not received or, if received, it is not authorized one.                                 |
| 29B6 | In Confidential Reception, the mail box specified by transmitter is not set up and open.   |
| 29C1 | In Closed Network setting, TSI/CSI is either not received or, if received, it is not authorized one.                                     |
| 39A0 | The number of continuous-error lines have exceeded the specified limit.  |
| 39A1 | The number of random-error lines have exceeded the specified limit.  |
| 39B0 | Memory Overflow has occurred while receiving in memory.  |
| 39B1 | Memory Overflow occurred during Confidential Reception.  |
| 39C0 | DECODER hardware error. (cannot reproduce picture)   |
| 39C1 | DECODER hardware error. (cannot detect end of picture)   |
| 41A0 | There was no response each time in response to the three post commands.  |
| 41A6 | Received signal other than the desired signal in response to the post command.   |
| 41A9 | Fall back in Phase C is not possible.  |
| 41AA | Received PIN for the post command.   |
| 41C8 | T5 time out.   |
| 41CE | Received negative signal in response to the post command.  |
| 49CC | Received signal other than the desired signal in response to RNR.  |
| 49CD | Command not received in response to RNR.   |
| 60A0 | Broadcast completed.   |
| 6803 | DCN received in response to NSF/DIS without sending a single picture.  |
| 9080 | Pressed STOP key.  |
| 9081 | T1 time out.   |
| 9082 | T2 time out.   |
| 9083 | T3 time out.   |
| 9084 | No recording paper.  |

| 9087 | Document jam.   |
|------|---|
| 9088 | 60-minute or 70-minute time out.  |
| 9089 | Document length has exceeded its maximum limit.                         |
| 908E | Recording paper jam.  |
| 9090 | Received DCN.   |
| 90B1 | Picture memory hash error.  |
| 90C1 | Document removed prior to transmission.                                 |
| 90C6 | Normal or error-free lines not received for 13 seconds.                 |
| 90C7 | Error frame protocol received.  |
| 90D4 | Hardware error in transmission system. (response of modem not detected) |
| 90D5 | ENCODER error. (Picture storage fault)                                  |
| 90F0 | Option (2'nd tray) error.   |
| 90F1 | Fan motor error.  |
| 90F2 | Fuser error.  |
| 90F3 | Recording paper size error.   |
| 90F4 | Cover open.   |



## **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

## General

This chapter contains:

- (a) Troubleshooting flow charts related to general operations
- (b) Troubleshooting flow charts by test operations
- (c) Troubleshooting flow charts placing an emphasis on mechanical portions

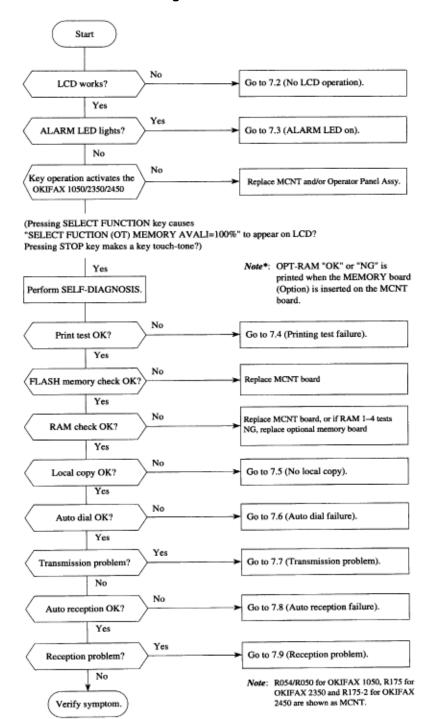
| Section<br>No. | Name of Flow Chart                 | (a) | (b) | (c) | Page         |
|----------------|------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|--------------|
| 7.1            | Overall troubleshooting flow chart | 0   | 0   |     | 7-2          |
| 7.2            | No LCD operation                   | 0   |     |     | 7-3          |
| 7.3            | ALARM LED on                       | 0   |     |     | 7-4          |
| 7.4            | Printing test failure              | 0   | 0   |     | 7-5          |
| 7.5            | No local copy                      | 0   | 0   |     | 7-6          |
| 7.6            | Auto dial failure                  | 0   |     |     | 7-7          |
| 7.7            | Transmission problem               | 0   |     |     | 7-8          |
| 7.8            | Auto reception failure             | 0   |     |     | 7-9          |
| 7.9            | Reception problem                  | 0   |     |     | 7-10         |
| 7.10           | Sensor calibration test            |     | 0   |     | 7-11         |
| 7.11           | LED test                           |     | 0   |     | 7-12         |
| 7.12           | Tone send test                     |     | 0   |     | 7-13         |
| 7.13           | High-speed modem test              |     | 0   |     | 7-14<br>7-15 |
| 7.14           | MF (Tone) send test                |     | 0   |     | 7-16         |
| 7.15           | Tone (TEL/FAX) send test           |     | 0   |     | 7-17         |
| 7.16           | No acoustic line monitor           | 0   |     |     | 7-18         |
| 7.17           | Power supply unit                  | 0   |     |     | 7-19         |
| 7.18           | No document feeding                |     |     | 0   | 7-20         |
| 7.19           | Multiple document feeding          |     |     | 0   | 7-21         |
| 7.20           | Document skew                      |     |     | 0   | 7-22         |

| 7.21 | Document jam |  | 0 | 7-24 |
|------|--------------|--|---|------|
| 7.22 | Printer unit |  |   | 7-25 |



## **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

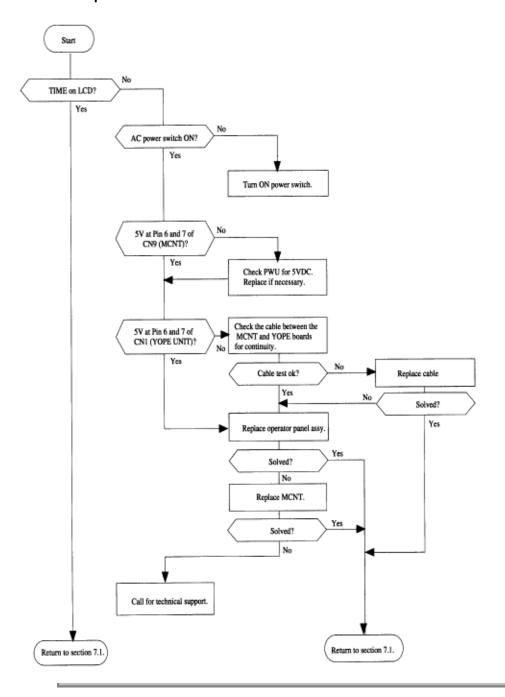
## 7.1 Overall Troubleshooting Flow Chart





**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

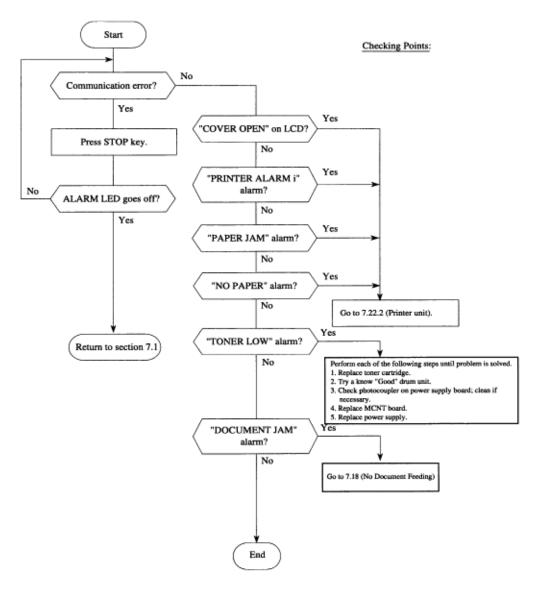
## 7.2 No LCD Operation





## **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

### 7.3 ALARM LED ON

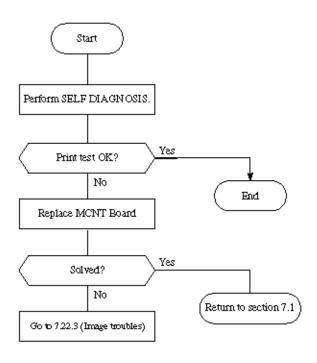


Note\*: "PRINTER ALARM i" will be shown as follows: PRINTER ALARI2 1 to PRINTER ALARM 4.



**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

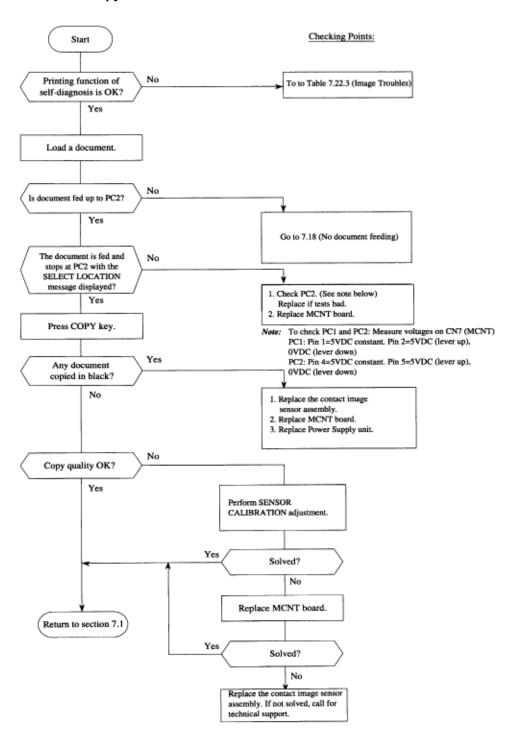
## 7.4 Printing Test Failure





### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

### 7.5 No Local Copy



Page: 186



## Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

#### 7.6 Auto Dial Failure

**Note:** Make sure that your selected dialing method (tone/pulse) is appropriate for your Telco / PBX needs. Refer to the Dialing Parameters in the Users Documentation.

**START** 

Will the unit perform a manual dial?

NO Can a dial tone be heard when the handset is picked up?

NO Make sure the RJ-11C is connected to the LINE Jack on the

OKIFAX.

Can a dial tone be heard?

YES End of procedure.

NO Unplug the Okifax 1000 from the RJ-11C and attach a standard single line telephone to the RJ-11C.

Can a dial tone be heard?

NO Contact your local TELCO.

YES Perform the following in the order listed:

- (1) Replace the modular line cord.
- (2) Replace the NCU-U board.
- (3) Hook switch.
- (4) MCNT board.

YES Replace the MCNT.

YES Replace the MCNT.

Is the problem resolved?

YES End of procedure.

NO Contact Technical Support.

Check the following items:

Off-hook bypass OFF (TF no. 05)

- MF/DP (Dial parameter)
- DP rate (Dial parameter)
- DP make ratio (Dial parameter)
   Dial type (Dial parameter)
- The other dial parameters

Note: TF=Technical function

Page: 187



## Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

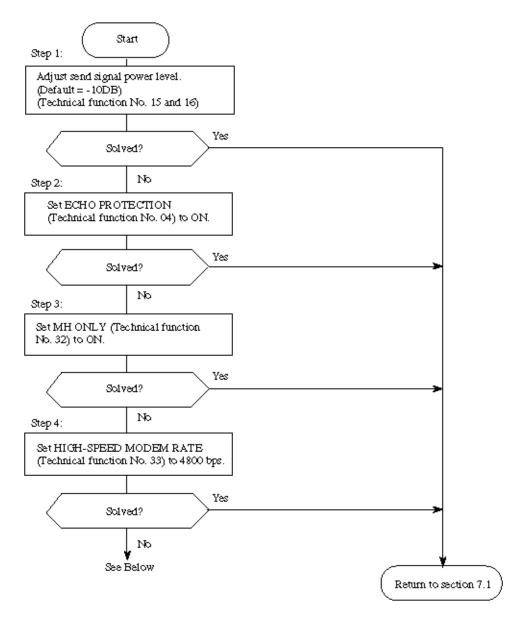
## **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

#### 7.7 Transmission Problem

This section explains how to localize the cause of problems occurred after completion of connection with a remote station.

Before beginning: Printout the Activity Report.

- Look for common failure items. For instance, is one particular country, area code or phone number always causing the problem?
- If possible, substitute the "defective" OKIFAX unit with a known good facsimile unit. If the trouble persists, there may be a problem with the line or at the receiving end.
- Check the OKIFAX User Functions, Dialing Parameters and Technical Functions.



Perform the High-Speed Modem Transmit Test (refer to section 7.13). If this test fails, perform replacements listed below until problem is corrected.

Data communication problems could have many different causes. It would be almost impossible to design a RAP to cover all possible situations. Therefore, once you have performed the above listed steps, replace the following assemblies in the order listed:

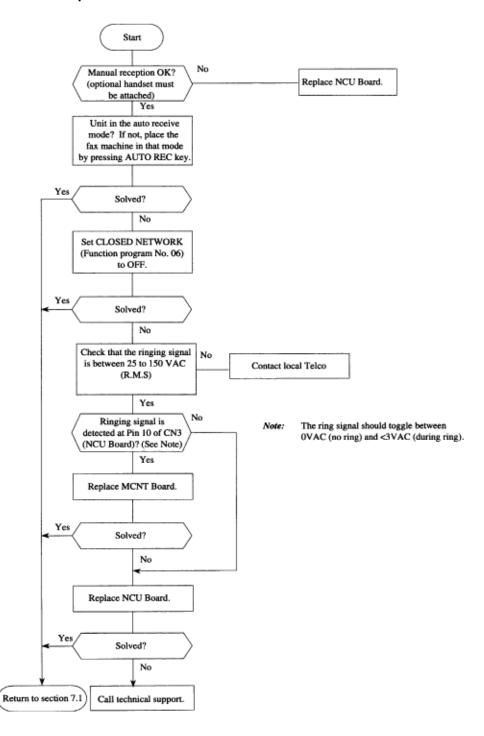
- 1) Modem board (OKIFAX 2350/2450 only)
- 2) MCNT board
- 3) NCU-U board.

**Note:** This procedure determines the cause of a problem which occurs after the OKIFAX unit connects with a remote station. Before troubleshooting any communication problems, run Self-Diagnosis, then verify that the Flash ROM version is the most current version (in accordance with the Product Bulletins (formerly known as Technical Service Bulletins TSBs If the Flash ROM version is not the most current, replace the MCNT board before proceeding!



## **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

## 7.8 Auto Reception Failure



Page: 189



## Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

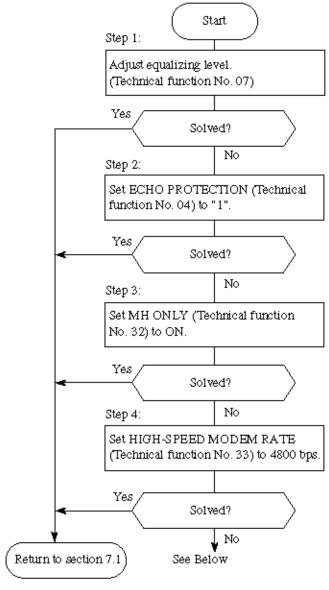
## **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

### 7.9 Reception Problem

This section explains how to localize the cause of problems occurred after completion of connection with a remote station.

Before beginning: Printout the Activity Report.

- Look for common failure items. For instance, is one particular country, area code or phone number always causing the problem?
- If possible, substitute the "defective" OKIFAX unit with a known good facsimile unit. If the trouble persists, there may be a problem with the line or at the receiving end.
- Check the OKIFAX User Functions, Dialing Parameters and Technical Functions.



Perform the High-Speed Modem Transmit Test (refer to section 7.13). If this test fails, perform replacements listed below until problem is corrected.

Data communication problems could have many different causes. It would be almost impossible to design a RAP to cover all possible situations. Therefore, once you have performed the above listed steps, replace the following assemblies in the order listed:

- 1) Modem board. (OKIFAX 2350/2450 only)
- 2) MCNT board.
- 3) NCU-U board.

**Note:** This procedure determines the cause of a problem which occurs after the OKIFAX unit connects with a remote station. Before troubleshooting any communication problems, run Self-Diagnosis, then verify that the Flash ROM version is the most current version (in accordance with the Product Bulletins (formerly known as Technical Service Bulletins [TSBs). If the Flash ROM version is not the most current, replace the MCNT board before proceeding!



### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

#### 7.10 Scan Calibration Test Failure

**START** 

Does the message SCANNING ERROR appear on the LCD when calibrating the CIS?

YES Be sure that plain white bond (A4 size) is loaded on the automatic document feeder.

Is - 12 vdc present at CN10, pin 4 of the MCNT board?

NO Replace the MCNT board

YES Replace the Contact Image Sensor

Is the problem resolved?

NO Check the "Scan-Control Cable" for continuity

YES End of procedure.

NO Is abnormal feeding observed during the SCANNING CHECK?

NO End of procedure.

YES Is the document not feeding at all?

YES Refer to section 7.18.

NO Is more than one document feeding?

YES Refer to section 7.19.

NO Does the document skew?

YES Refer to section 7.20.

NO Does the document jam?

YES Refer to section 7.21.

NO Is the problem resolved?

YES End of procedure.

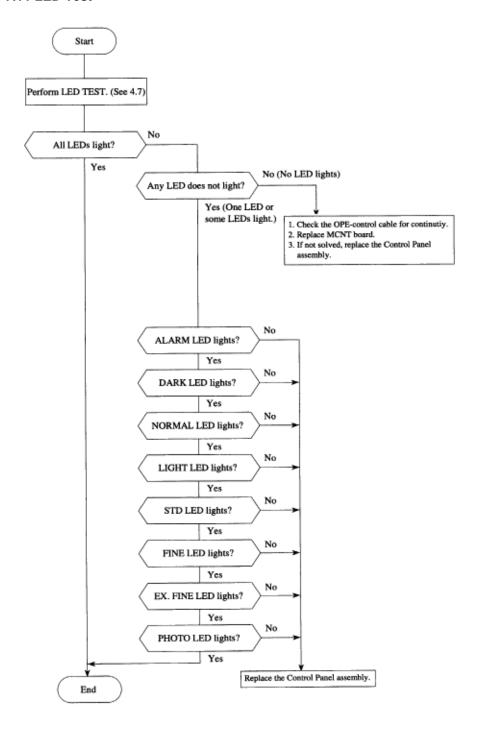
NO Contact Technical Support.

Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

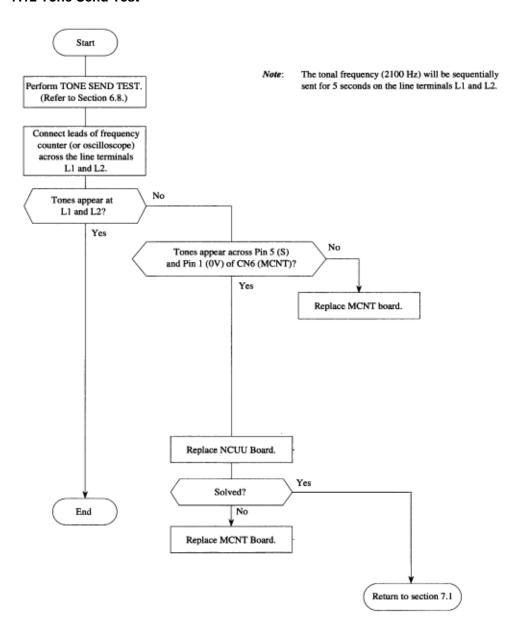
### 7.11 LED Test





### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

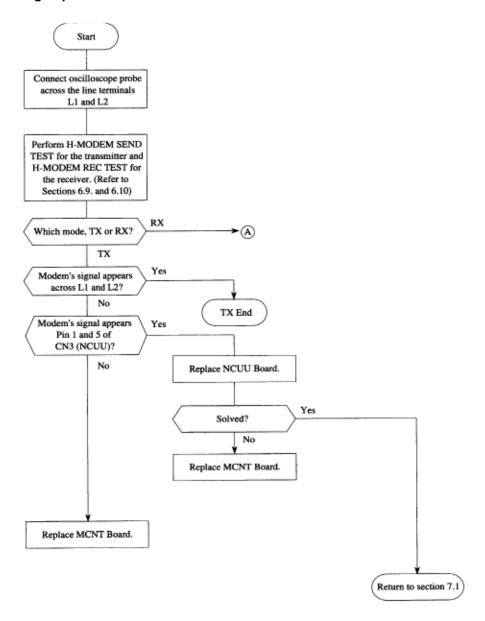
### 7.12 Tone Send Test

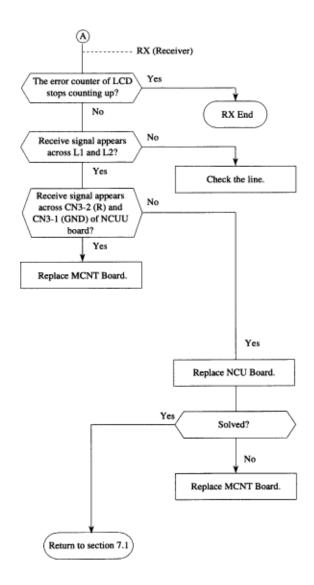




**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

## 7.13 High-speed Modem Test



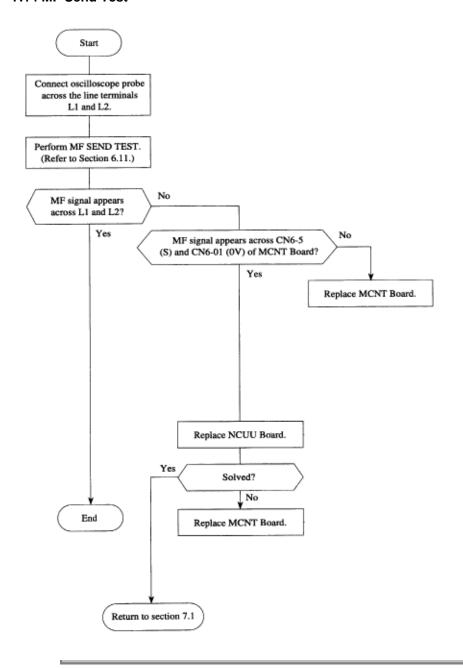


Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

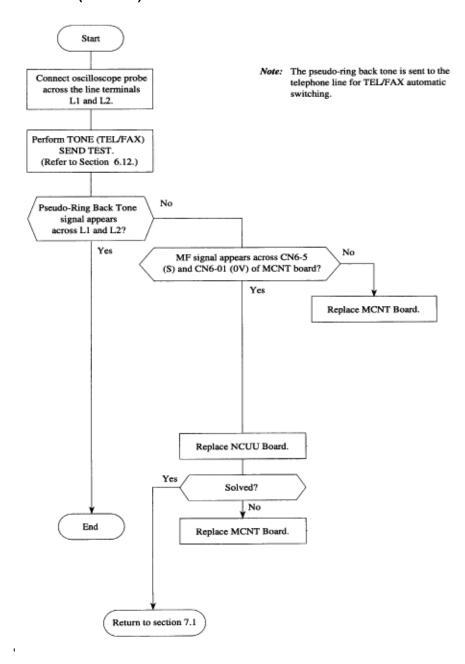
### 7.14 MF Send Test





### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

## 7.15 Tone (TEL/FAX) Send Test



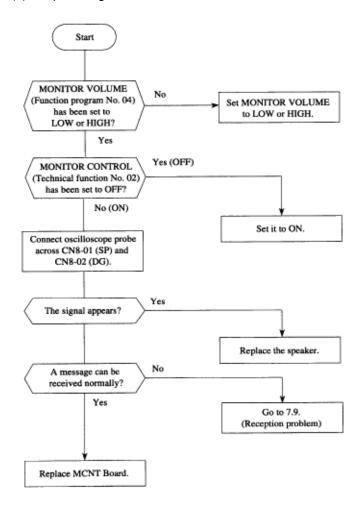


### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

### 7.16 No Acoustic Line Monitor

There are two source routes of acoustic line monitor:

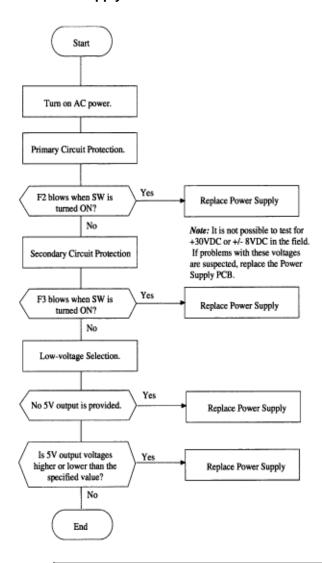
- (a) General communication signal
- (b) DP pulse signal





**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

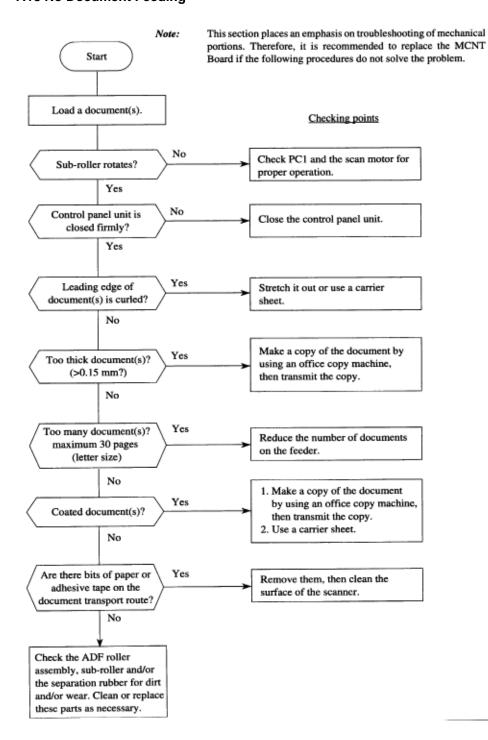
### 7.17 Power Supply Unit





#### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

### 7.18 No Document Feeding

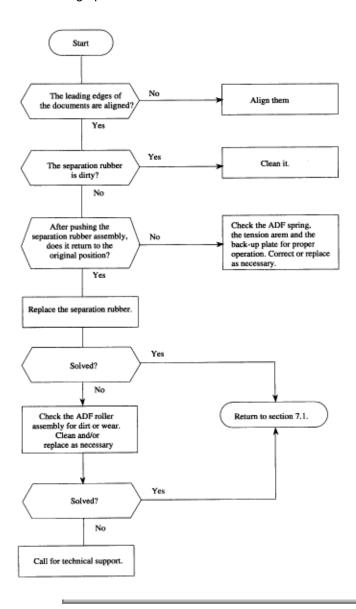




**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

#### 7.19 Multiple Document Feeding

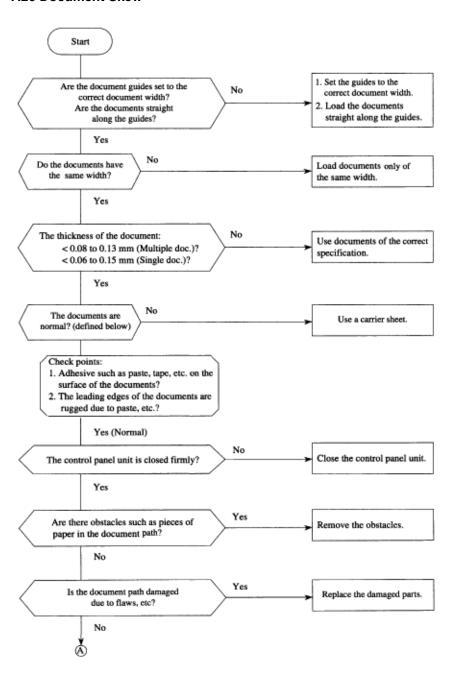
Definition: Multiple document feeding. Multiple documents are not separated and they are fed in the same one feeding operation.

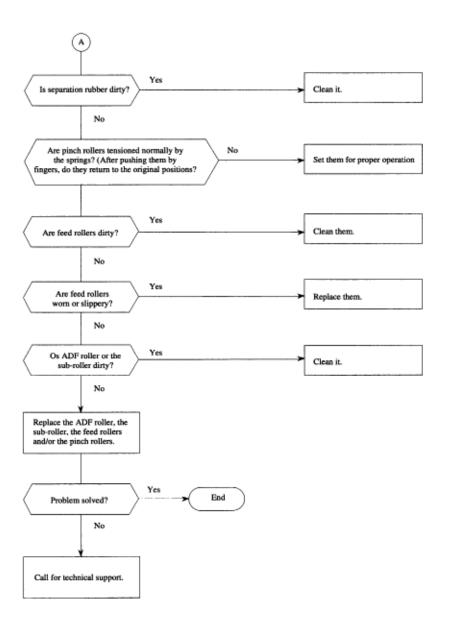




### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

#### 7.20 Document Skew

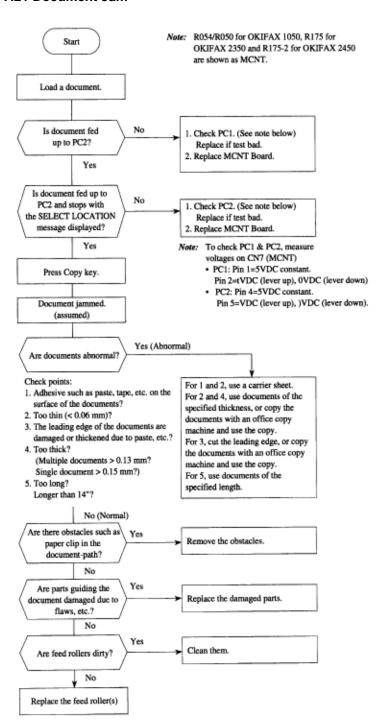






#### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

#### 7.21 Document Jam



not



### Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

#### Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair

#### 7.22 Printer Unit

#### 7.22.01 Precautions

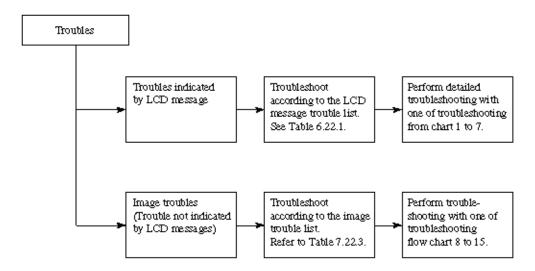
- 1. Points to check before correcting image troubles
- (1) Is the printer being run in proper ambient conditions? (See specifications in section 1) (2) Have the supplies (toner and Image Drum) been replaced properly?
  - (3) Are the supplies recommended Okidata Consumables?
  - (4) Is the recording paper normal?
  - (5) Has the Image Drum been loaded properly?
- 2. Tips for correcting image troubles
  - (1) Do not touch, or bring foreign matter into contact with the surface of the drum.
  - (2) Do not expose the drum to direct sunlight.
- (3) Components in the fuser area (fuser, backup roller, etc.) are very hot. Do touch them until they cool!
  - (4) Do not expose the drum to light for longer than 5 minutes at room temperature.



### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

### 7.22.2 Troubleshooting Flow Chart of Printer Unit

Overall troubleshooting flow chart:



| Category                   | LCD message<br>display                    | Trouble   | Troubleshooting flow chart number |
|----------------------------|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| Cover open                 | 14:14 [FAX]<br>COVER OPEN                 | The cover (copy stacker) is open.   | 1                                 |
| Image<br>drum<br>alarm     | 14:14 [FAX]<br>CHANGE DRUM                | Warning message to replace ID unit because of its life.                           | 2                                 |
| Engine<br>errors           | PRINTER ALARM<br>2[TEL]<br>PLEASE CONFIRM | Engine controller error (Option: 2nd tray)  | 3                                 |
|                            | PRINTER ALARM<br>3[TEL]<br>PLEASE CONFIRM | Fan motor rotation error  | 4                                 |
|                            | PRINTER ALARM<br>4[TEL]<br>PLEASE CONFIRM | Fuser unit thermal error  | 5                                 |
| Recording paper/ jam error | PAPER JAM [FAX]<br>CONFIRM AND<br>"STOP"  | Recording paper feed jam,<br>transport jam,<br>ejection jam, recording size error | 6                                 |

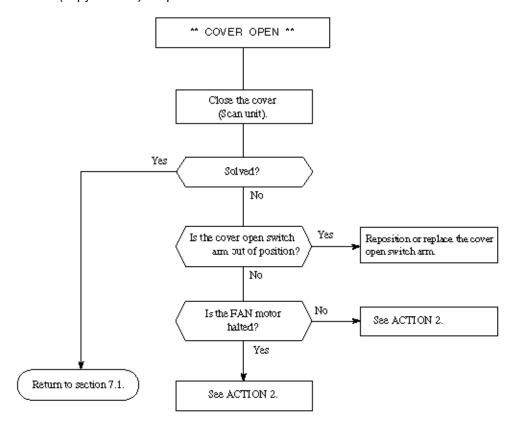
| Paper<br>cassette<br>request | NO PAPER [FAX]<br>REPLACE PAPER           | No recording paper cassette or no recording paper        | 7 |
|------------------------------|---|--|---|
| Daily<br>status              | TONER LOW [FAX]<br>REPLACE TONER<br>CART. | Toner is running short. Note: No toner memory RX is ON.  |   |
|                              | 14:14 [FAX]<br>REPLACE TONER<br>CART.     | Toner is running empty. Note: No toner memory RX is OFF. |   |



**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

#### **Troubleshooting flow chart 1:**

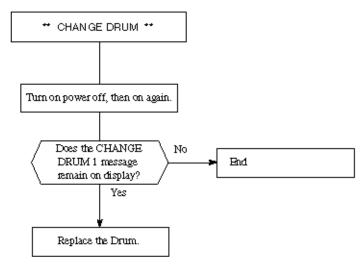
The cover (copy stacker) is open.





### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

### **Troubleshooting flow chart 2:**



Warning message to replace ID unit

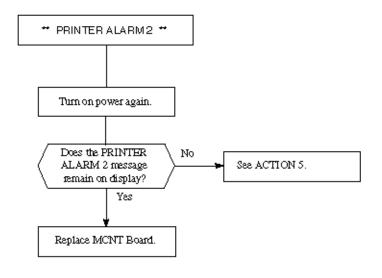
because of its life.



**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

### **Troubleshooting flow chart 3:**

Engine controller error (ROM/RAM error)

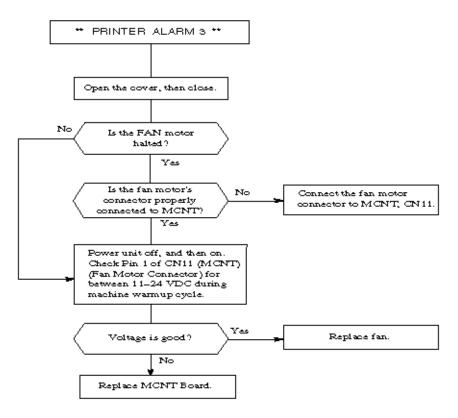




**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

### **Troubleshooting flow chart 4:**

Fan motor rotation error





#### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

#### **Troubleshooting flow chart 5:**

Printer Alarm 4

**START** 

PRINTER ALARM 4 appears on the LCD display.

Power OFF, then power ON.

After a short delay, does "PRINTER ALARM 4" appear on the LCD display?

YES Remove the fuser assembly for testing (Refer to the Action Items Diagram). Check the resistance between the thermistor contacts. At room temperature, it should read approximately 100 Kohms. (about 1.5 Kohms at high temperature).

Is the resistance correct?

NO Replace the fusing unit.

YES Does the thermistor contact correctly touch the contact assembly when the fusing unit is installed? (Refer to the Action Items Diagram)

NO Adjust the contacts as necessary.

YES Refer to Action Item 10. Power OFF, then Power ON.

Does PRINTER ALARM 4 occur approximately 60 seconds after powering ON the unit?

YES Is the heater lamp of the fusing unit ON? To check, remove the stacker cover. Overide the cover interlock. Light can be seen from the ends of the fuser when the heater lamp is ON.

NO Is the heater or thermistor open? Measure the resistance between the two heater contacts. Normal resistance is approximately 0 ohms.

YES Replace the fusing unit.

NO Is the AC voltage from the fuser present at the contact assembly?

NO Replace the MCNT board. If the problem persists, replace the power supply

board.

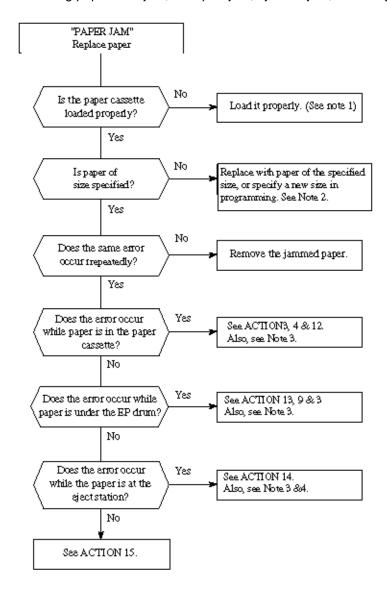
YES Replace the fusing unit.



#### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

#### **Troubleshooting flow chart 6:**

Recording paper feed jam, transport jam, ejection jam, recording size error



**Note 1:** The paper length stop must be set for the correct paper size, but should not be "pinching" the paper. Paper should not be loaded above the "paper fill" indicator.

**Note 2:** The programmed settings of user function number 10 (1st cassette size) and user function number 11 (2nd cassette size) (optional) should be set to match the paper size loaded in each paper cassette. If not, a "logical" jam will follow.

**Note 3:** Always vacuum loose toner from inside the printer. If toner has spilled, pay special attention to cleaning it from all drive gears. (Including the fuser roller gear and transfer (TR) Gear). Toner infused in the drive gear chain can cause jamming.

**Note 4:** Check fuser heat and back up rollers for dirt or toner contamination. Clean as necessary. **Always** allow fuser to cool before cleaning.

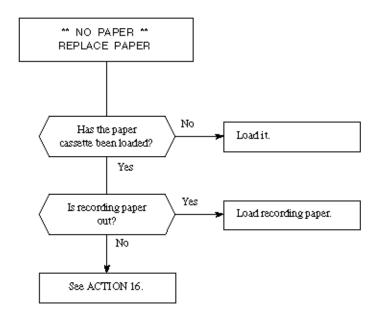
**Use Caution! Fuser area is very hot.** 



**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

### **Troubleshooting flow chart 7:**

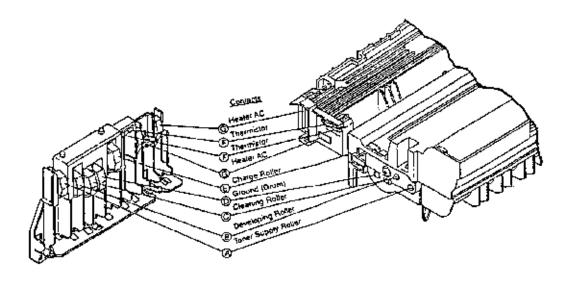
No recording paper cassette or not recording paper



| No. | ACTION  |
|-----|---|
| 1   | Check and/or replace MCNT board.  |
| 2   | Check the following & replace if necessary.: POWER SUPPY UNIT Cover Open Switch Cover Open Switch connection MCNT Board |
| 3   | Check one way clutch gears for proper operation.  |
| 4   | Replace cassette separator frame assy.  |
| 5   | Check proper installation of MCNT board, POWER SUPPLY UNIT board, and their connectors.                                 |
| 6   | Replace MCNT Board  |
| 7   | Check FAN motor, MCNT Board   |
| 8   | Check FAN motor, MCNT Board.  |

| 9  | Check for spilled toner. Vacuum all toner from printer and clean toner carefully from all drive gears.       |
|----|--|
| 10 | Check the connection between the power supply, contact assembly, fuser assembly, heater, and the thermostat. |
| 11 | Check PWU  |
| 12 | Check entrance sensor lever, hopping roller, and registration motor for dirt. MCNT Board, cover open state.  |
| 13 | Check cover open state, drum motor, drum motor gear, MCNT Board.   |
| 14 | Check exit sensor lever, cover open state, PWU, MCNT Board   |
| 15 | Check MCNT Board   |
| 16 | Check paper sensor lever, PWU, MCNT Board  |

**Action Items Diagram** High voltage outputs (and measurement points) are connected to the contact assembly as shown in the diagram below.



**Table 7.22.3 Image Troubles** 

Always test with a known "good" Image Drum before beginning to troubleshoot print image problems. Be sure that the contact assembly makes positive contact with the power supply, drum, and fuser. Clean or adjust the contacts as necessary.

| Abnormal Symptom                        | Reference<br>Figure | Troubleshooting Flow Chart |
|---|---------------------|----------------------------|
| Images are light or blurred as a whole. | Fig. A              | 8                          |
| The blank background is smeared.        | Fig. B              | 9                          |

| Blank paper is output.   | Fig. C | 10 |
|--|--------|----|
| Black belts or black stripes in vertical direction.                  | Fig. D | 11 |
| Periodic abnormal printing.  | Fig. E | 12 |
| Some parts not printed.  |        | 13 |
| White belts or some white stripes in vertical direction              | Fig. F | 14 |
| Poor fusing (Images are blurred or peeled off when touched by hands) |        | 15 |

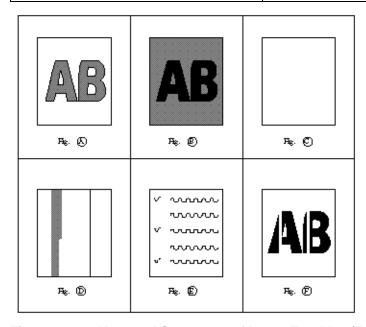
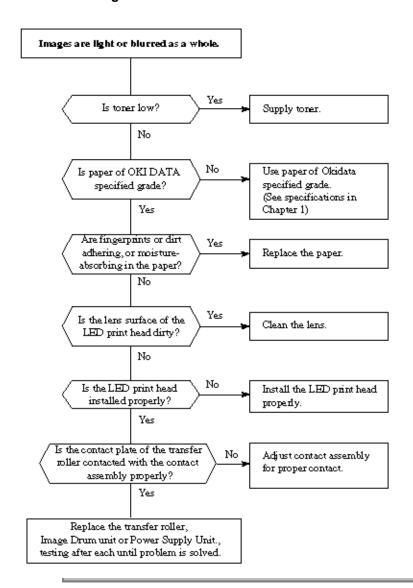


Figure 7.22.1 Abnormal Symptoms of Image Troubles (Example)



#### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

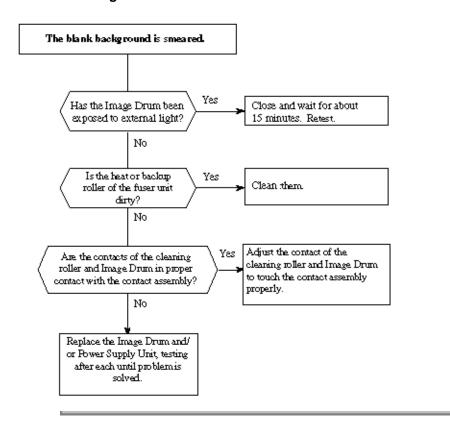
#### **Troubleshooting flow chart 8:**





**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

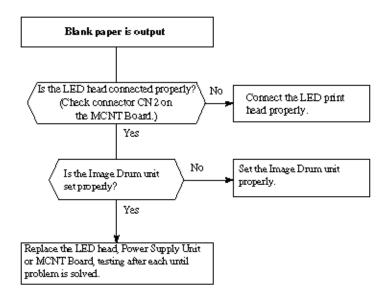
#### **Troubleshooting flow chart 9:**





**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

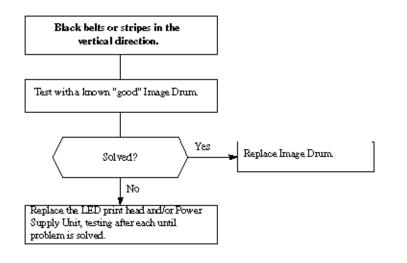
#### **Troubleshooting flow chart 10:**





**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

### **Troubleshooting flow chart 11:**



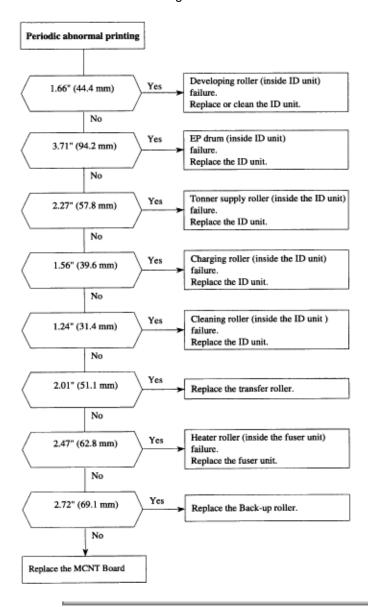


#### **Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair**

#### **Troubleshooting flow chart 12:**

This refers to repetitive "spots" or unusual marks on printed pages. Measure the distance between them to determine the problem.

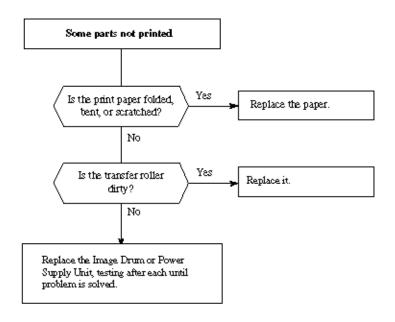
Note: "ID" refers to the Image Drum.





**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

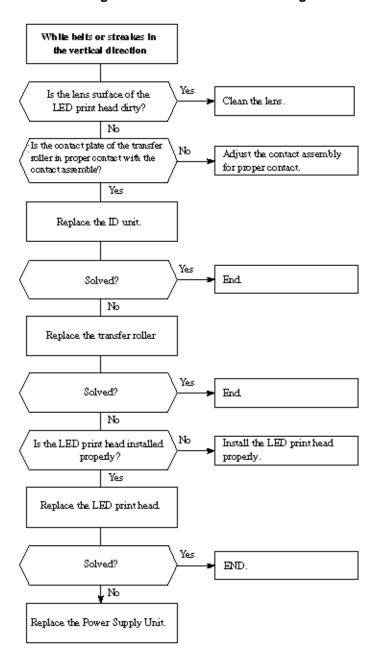
### **Troubleshooting flow chart 13:**

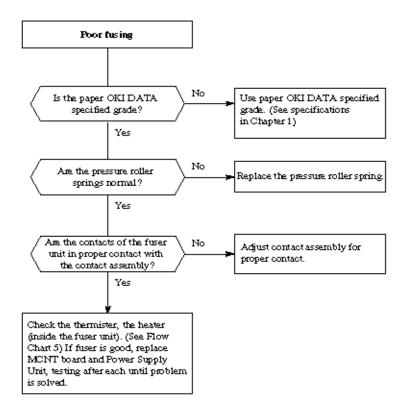




**Chapter 7 Troubleshooting and Repair** 

### Troubleshooting flow chart 14: Troubleshooting flow chart 15:



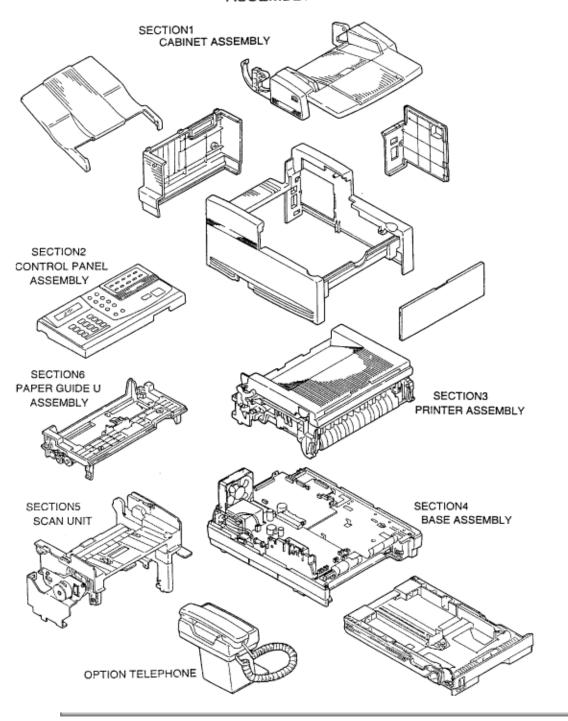




**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

**OKIFAX 1050** 

#### ASSEMBLY



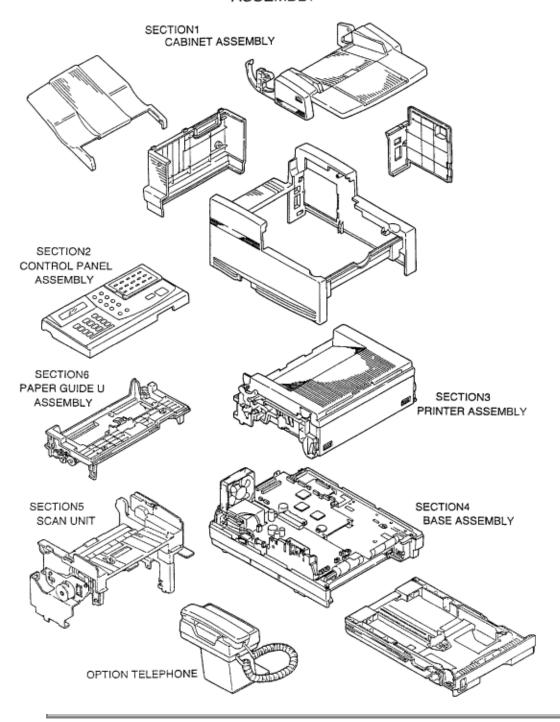
Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

OKIFAX 2350/2450

### ASSEMBLY



Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)

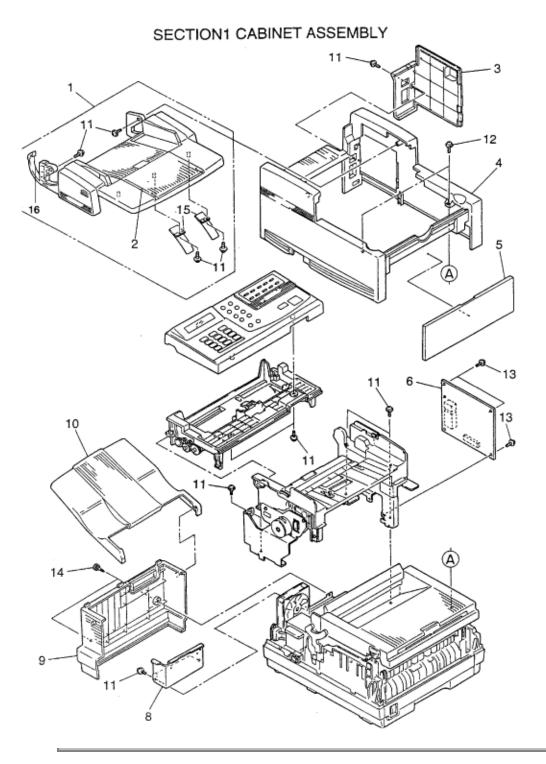
Page: 220



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

**OKIFAX 1050** 



Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)

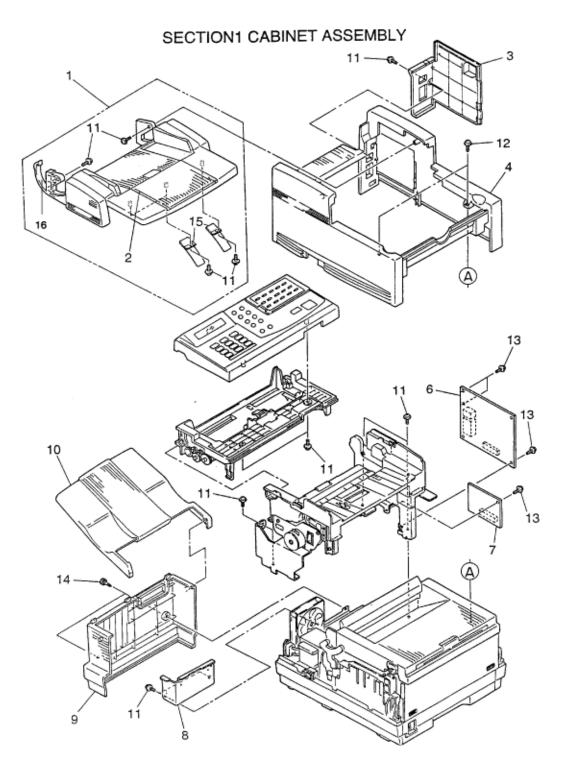
Page: 221



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

OKIFAX 2350/2450



Section 1: Cabinet

| Illustratio | OKIFAX | Description | Okidata | Oki         |
|-------------|--------|-------------|---------|-------------|
| n           |        |             | Part    | Part Number |
| Number      |        |             | Number  |             |

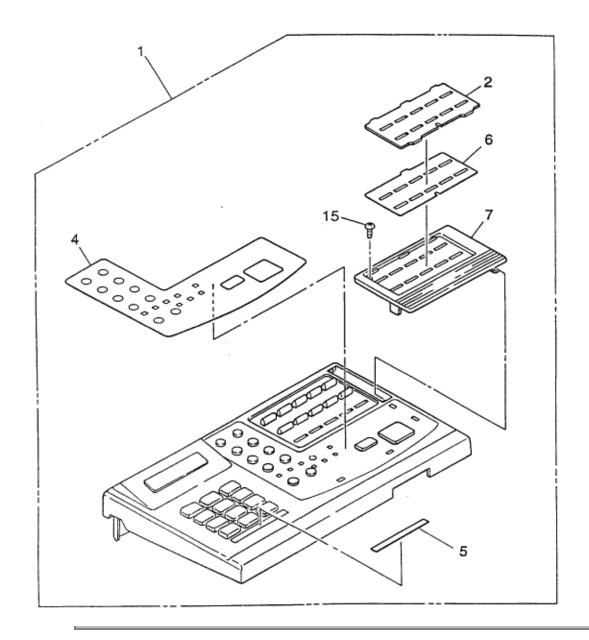
| 1  | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | DOCUMENT HOPPER ASSY. | 50607301 | 1PA4120-1079G<br>1  |
|----|--------------------|-----------------------|----------|---------------------|
| 2  | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | TRAY: SUB HOPPER      | 50220901 | 2PP4120-1084P<br>1  |
| 3  | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | COVER: NCU            | 53075901 | 2PP4120-1091P<br>1  |
| 4  | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | COVER: MAIN           | 53075801 | 1PP4120-1089P<br>1  |
| 5  | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | COVER: FRONT          | 53075701 | 1PP4120-1092P<br>1  |
| 6  | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | PCB: NCU-U            | 55079101 | 4YA4129-1008G<br>1  |
| 7  | 2350               | PCB: MODEM (9.6K)     | 55079201 | 4YA4135-1032G<br>1  |
| 7  | 2350/2450          | PCB: MODEM (14.4K)    | 55079202 | 4YA4135-1032G<br>2  |
| 8  | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | PLATE: PARTITION      | 51019501 | 3PP4120-1088P<br>1  |
| 9  | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | COVER: REAR           | 53076001 | 1PP4120-1090P<br>1  |
| 10 | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | TRAY: STACKER         | 50221001 | 1PP4120-1093P<br>1  |
| 11 | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                 | N/A      | +BTD3-8-IOF         |
| 12 | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                 | N/A      | 4PB4083-2500P<br>10 |
| 13 | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                 | N/A      | 4PB4013-3102P<br>2  |
| 14 | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | SCREW: KNOB           | 50317601 | 4PB4120-1136P<br>1  |
| 15 | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | GUIDE: ASSIST         | 51019601 | 4PP4120-1161G<br>1  |
| 16 | 1050/2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: METAL TENSION | 50930601 | 4PP4120-1107P<br>1  |



**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

**OKIFAX 1050** 

## SECTION2 CONTROL ASSEMBLY



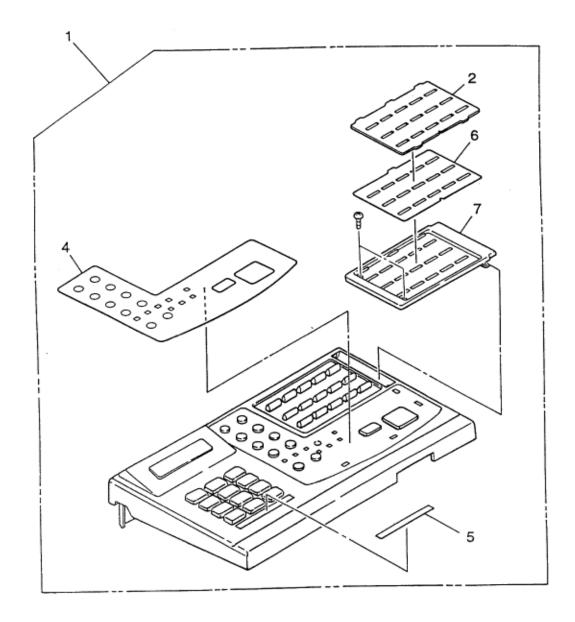
Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

**OKIFAX 2350** 

# SECTION2 CONTROL ASSEMBLY



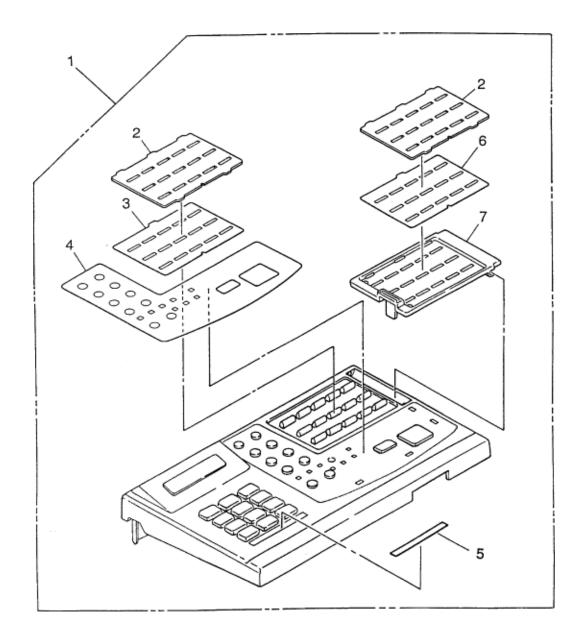
Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

**OKIFAX 2450** 

# SECTION2 CONTROL ASSEMBLY



**Section 2: Control** 

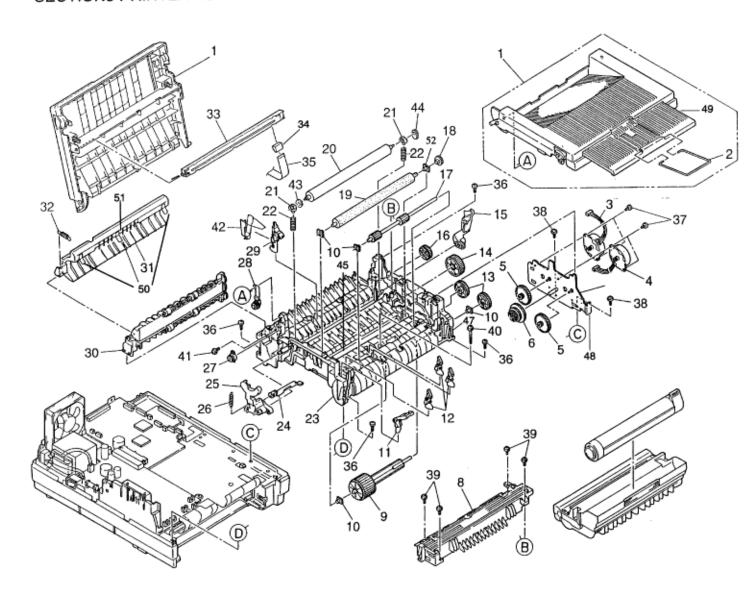
| Illustratio<br>n<br>Number | OKIF<br>AX             | Description           | Okidata<br>Part Number | Oki<br>Part Number   |
|----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1                          | 1050                   | PANEL: CONTROL ASSY.  | 50112310               | 4YA4120-1056G10      |
| 1                          | 2350                   | PANEL: CONTROL ASSY.  | 50112311               | 4YA4120-1056G11<br>0 |
| 1                          | 2450                   | PANEL: CONTROL ASSY.  | 50112321               | 4YA4120-1056G21<br>0 |
| 2                          | 1050                   | FILM: ONE TOUCH COVER | 52203201               | 4PB4120-1102P1       |
| 2                          | 2350/<br>2450          | FILM: ONE TOUCH COVER | 52203301               | 4PB4120-1074P1       |
| 3                          | 2450                   | SHEET: ONE TOUCH (L)  | 52081310               | 4PB4120-1073P10<br>1 |
| 4                          | 1050                   | FUNCTION SHEET        | N/A                    | 3PB4120-1070P10      |
| 4                          | 2350                   | FUNCTION SHEET        | N/A                    | 3PB4120-1070P11<br>0 |
| 4                          | 2450                   | FUNCTION SHEET        | N/A                    | 3PB4120-1070P21<br>0 |
| 5                          | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | TEN KEY LABEL         | N/A                    | 4PB4014-4776P20<br>1 |
| 6                          | 1050                   | SHEET: ONE TOUCH      | 52081201               | 4PB4120-1101P1       |
| 6                          | 2350/<br>2450          | SHEET: ONE TOUCH (U)  | 52081301               | 4PB4120-1073P1       |
| 7                          | 1050                   | COVER: ONE TOUCH      | N/A                    | 1PP4120-1112P1       |
| 7                          | 2350                   | COVER: ONE TOUCH      | N/A                    | 1PP4120-1111P1       |
| 7                          | 2450                   | COVER: ONE TOUCH      | 53076101               | 1PP4120-1072P1       |



**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

### **OKIFAX 2350/2450**

# SECTION3 PRINTER ASSEMBLY

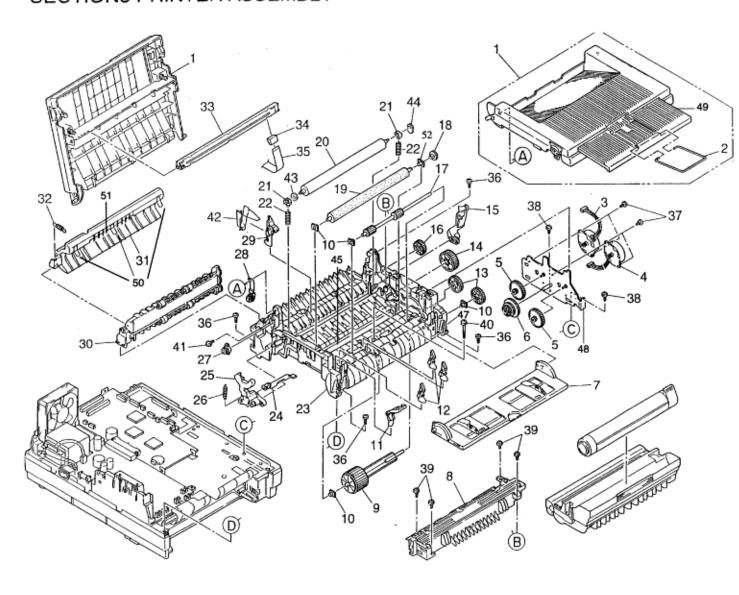




**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

**OKIFAX 1050** 

# SECTION3 PRINTER ASSEMBLY



### **Section 3: Printer**

| Illustratio<br>n | OKIF<br>AX | Description | Okidata<br>Part Number | Oki<br>Part Number |
|------------------|------------|-------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| Number           |            |             |                        |                    |

| 1  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | COVER:<br>FACE DOWN STACKER<br>ASSY. | 53069008 | 2PA4083-6160G8 |
|----|------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|----------------|
| 2  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | WIRE: GUIDE                          | 51013801 | 4PB3517-1567P1 |
| 3  | 1050                   | MOTOR: MAIN STEPPER                  | 56511303 | 4PB4122-1243P3 |
| 3  | 2350/<br>2450          | MOTOR: MAIN STEPPER                  | 56512701 | 4YB4120-1117P1 |
| 4  | 1050                   | MOTOR: REGISTRATION<br>STEPPER       | 56511302 | 4PB4122-1243P2 |
| 4  | 2350/<br>2450          | MOTOR: REGISTRATION<br>STEPPER       | 56512601 | 4YB4120-1118P1 |
| 5  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GEAR: STEPPER MOTOR IDLE             | 51225701 | 4PP4083-2593P1 |
| 6  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GEAR: REDUCTION                      | 51229301 | 3PP4083-6076P1 |
| 7  | 2350/<br>2450          | GUIDE: MANUAL FEED ASSY.             | 51011001 | 2PA4083-6130G1 |
| 8  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | UNIT: FUSER 120V ASSY.               | 50220801 | 2YX4120-1128G1 |
| 9  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SHAFT: HOPPING ROLLER ASSY.          | 50219601 | 3PA4122-1295G1 |
| 10 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BEARING                              | 50607401 | 4PP4083-6022P2 |
| 11 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SENSOR: TONER                        | 50405501 | 4PP4083-6086G1 |
| 12 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | PLATE: SENSOR (INLET)                | 51010701 | 4PP4083-6083P1 |
| 13 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GEAR: ONE WAY CLUTCH                 | 51228901 | 4PB4083-6024P1 |
| 14 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GEAR: FUSER ROLLER IDLE              | 51229101 | 4PP4083-6080P1 |

| 15 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | LEVER: RESET (R)               | 50805901 | 3PP4083-6054P1 |
|----|------------------------|--------------------------------|----------|----------------|
| 16 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GEAR: EJECT ROLLER IDLE        | 51229201 | 4PP4083-6081P1 |
| 17 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ROLLER: REGISTRATION (F)       | 50407001 | 3PB4122-1281P1 |
| 18 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GEAR: TR                       | 51236601 | 3PP4083-6290P1 |
| 19 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ROLLER: TRANSFER               | 50409301 | 3YB4083-7640P1 |
| 20 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ROLLER: BACK UP                | 53343702 | 3PB4083-6064P2 |
| 21 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BUSHING: PRESSURE<br>ROLLER    | 51607601 | 4PP4083-6052P1 |
| 22 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: BIAS                   | 50925301 | 4PP4083-6065P1 |
| 23 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BASE: LOWER SUB ASSY.          | 50220701 | 1PA4120-1157G1 |
| 24 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ARM: COVER OPEN                | 53068901 | 3PP4083-6058P1 |
| 25 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | LEVER: RESET (L)               | 50805801 | 3PP4083-6053P1 |
| 26 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: STACKER COVER<br>RESET | 50924201 | 4PP4083-6057P1 |
| 27 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GEAR: STACKER COVER<br>DAMPER  | 51229401 | 4PB4083-6197P1 |
| 28 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ARM: STACKER COVER<br>DAMPER   | 53069101 | 4PP4083-6191G1 |

| 29 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | LEVER: EXIT SENSOR ASSY. | 51010802 | 4PA4083-6025G1  |
|----|------------------------|--------------------------|----------|-----------------|
| 30 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ROLLER: EXIT ASSY.       | 50409901 | 2PA4120-1129G1  |
| 31 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GUIDE: RELEASE ASSY.     | 51019201 | 2PA4120-1085G1  |
| 32 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: RELEASE          | 50930001 | 4PP4120-1087P1  |
| 33 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | LED HEAD                 | 56110802 | 4YA4116-1115G2  |
| 34 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | CONNECTOR: PC            | 56730201 | 224A1286P0140   |
| 35 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | CABLE: LED ASSY.         | 56632401 | 4YX4120-1124G1  |
| 36 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                    | N/A      | T2P4-12HHC      |
| 37 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                    | N/A      | 4PB4013-3104P5  |
| 38 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                    | N/A      | +BTD3-8-IOF     |
| 39 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                    | N/A      | 4PB4083-2500P10 |
| 40 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                    | N/A      | 4PB4013-3100P25 |
| 41 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                    | N/A      | 4PB4083-2500P8  |
| 42 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | WIRE: SENSOR ASSY.       | 56633001 | 4PA4120-1170G1  |

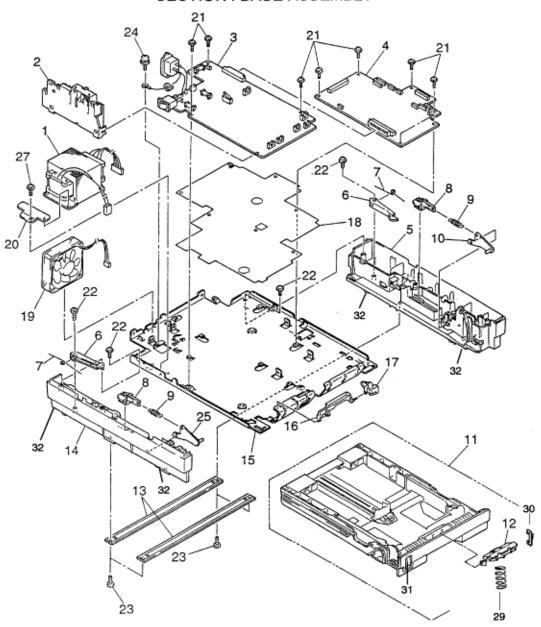
| 43 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | WASHER: B                        | 50517001 | 4PP4120-1209P1 |
|----|------------------------|----------------------------------|----------|----------------|
| 44 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | WASHER: C                        | 50517201 | 4PP4120-1210P1 |
| 45 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | STRIP: ANTI STATIC               | 51010903 | 4PB4083-3182P3 |
| 46 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | CONTACT:<br>GROUND CLIP LED HEAD | 51014601 | 4PP4083-6173P1 |
| 47 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BEARING: REGISTRATION<br>ROLLER  | 51607501 | 4PP4083-6031P1 |
| 48 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BRACKET: MOTOR                   | 51709901 | 3PP4083-6071G1 |
| 49 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | TRAY: STACKER COVER EXT.         | 50104801 | 2PP4083-6162P1 |
| 50 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | FILM: STACKER MYLAR              | 52203401 | 4PB4120-1138P1 |
| 51 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BRUSH: STATIC: RELEASE<br>GUIDE  | 51305103 | 4PB4120-1051P3 |
| 52 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BEARING: TR                      | 51609001 | 3PP4083-6289P1 |



**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

## **OKIFAX 1050**

## SECTION4 BASE ASSEMBLY





**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

### OKIFAX 2350/2450

### **Section 4: Base Assembly**

| Illustratio<br>n<br>No. | OKIF<br>AX             | Description                 | Okidata<br>Part Number | Oki<br>Part Number |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1                       | 1050                   | POWER TRANSFORMER<br>(120V) | 56414701               | 4YB4049-7032P1     |
| 1                       | 2350/<br>2450          | POWER TRANSFORMER<br>(120V) | 56414801               | 4YB4049-7082P1     |
| 2                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ASSY: CONTACT               | 56730001               | 3PA4083-6090G1     |
| 3                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | POWER SUPPLY UNIT (120V)    | 56414601               | 4YA4049-7109G1     |
| 4                       | 1050                   | PCB: MAIN CONTROL           | 55079001               | 4YA4134-1031G1     |
| 4                       | 2350                   | PCB: MAIN CONTROL           | 55079011               | 4YA4134-1031G11    |
| 4                       | 2450                   | PCB: MAIN CONTROL           | 55079012               | 4YA4134-1031G12    |
| 5                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GUIDE: CASSETTE (R) ASSY.   | 51019101               | 3PP4083-7671G1     |
| 6                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | LEVER: CASSETTE LOCK        | 50808401               | 3PP4083-7653P1     |
| 7                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: CASSETTE LOCK       | 50929501               | 4PP4083-7655P1     |
| 8                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BLOCK: LINK PULL            | 53345201               | 4PP4122-1170P1     |
| 9                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: SHEET               | 50929901               | 4PP4083-7666P1     |

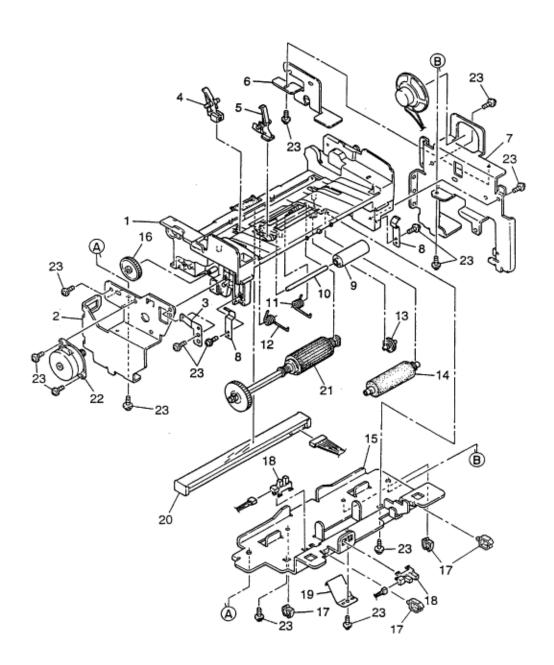
| 10 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | LINK: SHEET (R)               | 50808601 | 4PP4083-7658G1  |
|----|------------------------|-------------------------------|----------|-----------------|
| 11 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | CASSETTE: PAPER ASSY.         | 50110501 | 1PA4120-1162G1  |
| 12 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | FRAME: SEPARATION ASSY.       | 53345601 | 3PP4083-5663G1  |
| 13 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BEAM                          | 51608801 | 3PP4083-7660P1  |
| 14 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GUIDE: CASSETTE (L) ASSY.     | 51019001 | 3PP4083-7670G1  |
| 15 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | PLATE: BASE SUB ASSY.         | 51018901 | 1PA4120-1158G1  |
| 16 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | PLATE: CASSETTE SENSOR        | 51011501 | 3PP4083-6154P1  |
| 17 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | PLATE: PAPER SUPPLY<br>SENSOR | 51019701 | 4PP4083-7667P1  |
| 18 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | INSULATOR                     | 51711301 | 2PB4120-1103P1  |
| 19 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | MOTOR: FAN                    | 56512801 | 4YB4120-1119P1  |
| 20 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | PLATE: TRANSFORMER<br>DUMMY   | 51019801 | 4PP4120-1100P1  |
| 21 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                         | N/A      | 4PB4013-3102P2  |
| 22 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                         | N/A      | 4PB4083-2500P10 |
| 23 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                         | N/A      | +T2P3-8-HHC     |

| 24 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                   | N/A      | +P(SW+W)4-6-HH<br>C |
|----|------------------------|-------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| 25 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | LINK: SHEET (L)         | 50808501 | 4PP4083-7657G1      |
| 26 | 2450                   | BATTERY: BACK UP        | 56306901 | 4YB4120-1094P1      |
| 27 | 1050                   | SCREW                   | N/A      | +BTD3-8-IOF         |
| 27 | 2350/<br>2450          | SCREW                   | N/A      | +BTD3-8-IOF         |
| 28 | 2350/<br>2450          | SCREW                   | N/A      | +TP2.6-8-HHC        |
| 29 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: SEPARATOR       | 50930701 | 4PP4083-7728P1      |
| 30 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: ANTI VIBRATION  | 50926901 | 4PP4083-6228P1      |
| 31 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | INDICATOR: PAPER SUPPLY | 57001501 | 3PP4122-1171P1      |
| 32 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | FOOT: RUBBER            | 50806104 | 4PB4016-1960P4      |

**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

### OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450

### SECTION5 SCAN UNIT



**Section 5: Scan Unit** 

| Illustratio<br>n<br>No. | OKIF<br>AX             | Description                 | Okidata<br>Part Number | Oki<br>Part Number |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | FRAME: SCANNER SUB<br>ASSY. | 53348001               | 2PA4120-1160G1     |
| 2                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BASE: SCANNER (L)           | 50221101               | 2PP4120-1034P1     |
| 3                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | PLATE: ADF GROUND           | 51019901               | 4PP4120-1023P1     |
| 4                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | LEVER: PC2                  | 50808801               | 3PP4120-1017P1     |
| 5                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | LEVER: PC1                  | 50808701               | 3PP4120-1016P1     |
| 6                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | PLATE: POCKET               | 51020001               | 3PP4120-1038P1     |
| 7                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BASE: SCANNER (R)           | 50221201               | 2PP4120-1037P1     |
| 8                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: LATCH               | 50930101               | 4PP4120-1032P1     |
| 9                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ROLLER: PINCH               | 50406201               | 4PP3529-5045P1     |
| 10                      | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SHAFT: PINCH ROLLER         | 51113701               | 4PP4120-1020P1     |
| 11                      | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: PINCH (R)           | 50930301               | 4PP4120-1022P1     |
| 12                      | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: PINCH (L)           | 50930201               | 4PP4120-1021P1     |
| 13                      | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GEAR: ADF IDLE              | 51229501               | 4PP3529-5033P1     |

| 14 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ROLLER: SUB (ASSY)    | 50406101 | 4PA3529-5082G1 |
|----|------------------------|-----------------------|----------|----------------|
| 15 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | PLATE: SCANNER BOTTOM | 51020101 | 2PP4120-1029P1 |
| 16 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GEAR: Z81/15          | 51236301 | 4PP3529-5039P1 |
| 17 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | CLAMP: MINI           | 50708701 | 4PB3527-5803P1 |
| 18 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SENSOR: PHOTO         | 50410001 | 4YB4120-1137P1 |
| 19 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SPRING: SCANNER       | 50930401 | 4PP4120-1030P1 |
| 20 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SENSOR: CONTACT IMAGE | 50410101 | 4YB4120-1121P1 |
| 21 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | ROLLER: ADF ASSY.     | 50410201 | 3PA4120-1018G1 |
| 22 | 1050                   | MOTOR: SCAN           | 56512901 | 4YB4120-1035P1 |
| 22 | 2350/<br>2450          | MOTOR: SCAN           | 56513101 | 4YB4120-1036P1 |
| 23 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                 | N/A      | +BTD3-8-10F    |

Page: 230

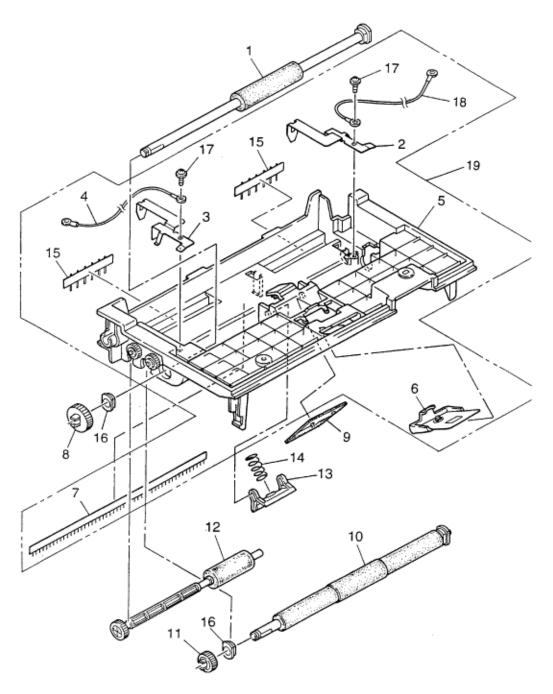


# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

OKIFAX 1050/2350/2450

# SECTION6 PAPER GUIDE U ASSEMBLY



Section 6: Paper Guide

| Illustratio | OKIF | Description | Okidata     | Oki         |
|-------------|------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| n           | AX   |             | Part Number | Part Number |
| No.         |      |             |             |             |

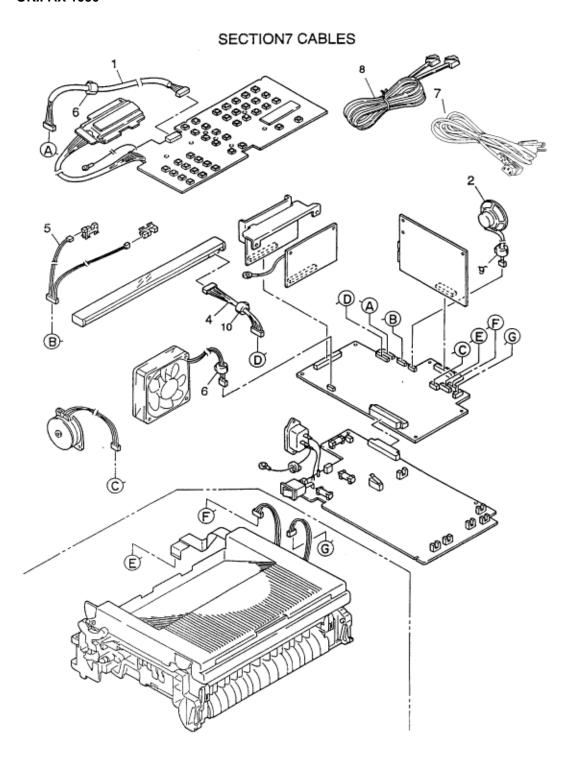
| 1  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                                    | ROLLER: FEED (1) ASSY.     | 50410301 | 3PA4120-1045G1   |  |
|----|---|----------------------------|----------|------------------|--|
| 2  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                                    | PLATE: GROUND (SR)         | 51020201 | 4PP4120-1047P1   |  |
| 3  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                                    | PLATE: GROUND (SL)         | 51020301 | 4PP4120-1048P1   |  |
| 4  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                                    | GROUND WIRE                | N/A      | 4YS4011-1714P2   |  |
| 5  | 5 1050/ GUIDE: PAPER (U) SUB 51020<br>2350/ ASSY.<br>2450 |                            | 51020401 | 2PA4120-1159G1   |  |
| 6  | 6 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 PLATE: PINCH ASSY. 51020         |                            | 51020501 | 4PA4120-1041G1   |  |
| 7  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 BRUSH: GROUND                      |                            | 51305101 | 4PB4120-1051P1   |  |
| 8  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                                    | GEAR: Z28                  | 51236401 | 4PP3529-5035P1   |  |
| 9  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                                    | RUBBER: SEPARATOR<br>ASSY. | 53344901 | 4PA3529-5087G1   |  |
| 10 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                                    | ROLLER: SENSOR ASSY.       | 51410501 | 3PA4120-1049G1   |  |
| 11 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 GEAR: Z22                          |                            | 51236501 | 4PP3529-5034P1   |  |
| 12 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 ROLLER: EXIT ASSY.                 |                            | 51410401 | 1 3PA4120-1052G1 |  |
| 13 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 PLATE: ADF BACK UP                 |                            | 53339801 | 4PP3527-5153P1   |  |
| 14 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                                    | SPRING: ADF                | 50930501 | 4PP4120-1044P1   |  |

| 15 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BRUSH: GROUND                   | 51305102 | 4PB4120-1051P2 |
|----|------------------------|---------------------------------|----------|----------------|
| 16 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BEARING                         | 51608901 | 4PP3522-3568P1 |
| 17 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | SCREW                           | N/A      | +BTP3-8-IOF    |
| 18 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | GROUND WIRE                     | N/A      | 4YS4011-1714P3 |
| 19 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | FRAME: PAPER GUIDE (U)<br>ASSY. | 51020601 | 2PA4120-1213G1 |



**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

## **OKIFAX 1050**



Page: 232

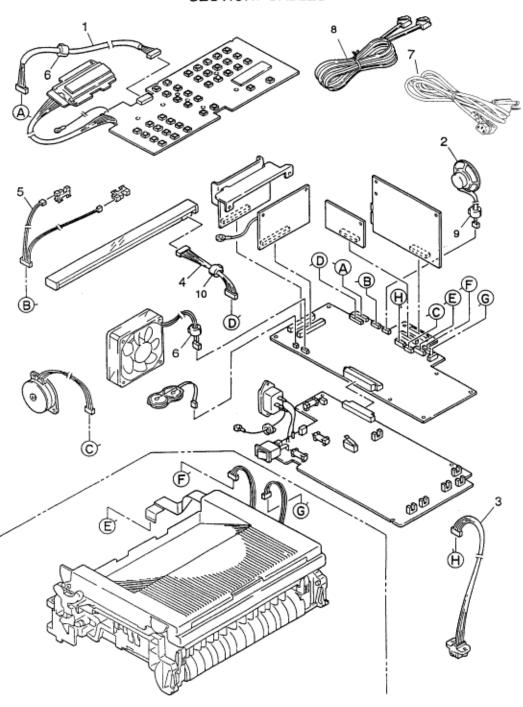


# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

OKIFAX 2350/2450

# SECTION7 CABLES



Section 7: Cables

| Illustratio | OKIF | Description | Okidata     | Oki         |
|-------------|------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| n           | AX   |             | Part Number | Part Number |
| No.         |      |             |             |             |

| 1  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                               | CABLE: OPE-CONTROL           | 56632501 | 4YS4111-3440P1 |
|----|--|------------------------------|----------|----------------|
| 2  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                               | SPEAKER                      | 57001701 | 4YB4120-1026P1 |
| 3  | 2350/<br>2450  | CABLE: 2ND TRAY<br>CONNECTOR | 56632801 | 3YS4111-3527P1 |
| 4  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                               | CABLE: SCAN-CONTROL          | 56632601 | 4YS1111-3441P1 |
| 5  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450<br>CABLE: ADF<br>SENS-CONTROL |                              | 56632701 | 4YS1111-3442P1 |
| 6  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                               | CORE: FERRITE                | 55505201 | 105A1070C0001  |
| 7  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                               | CORD: AC POWER               | 56618901 | 4YS3512-1485P1 |
| 8  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                               | CABLE: TEL/LINE              | 56621001 | 236A3161P2     |
| 9  | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 CORE: FERRITE 5               |                              | 55505303 | 105A1051C1003  |
| 10 | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450                               | CORE: FERRITE                | 55505203 | 105A1070C0003  |



**Chapter 8 Drawings and Parts List** 

### **Section 8: Packaging**

| Illustratio<br>n<br>No. | OKIF<br>AX             | Description              | Okidata<br>Part Number | Oki<br>Part Number |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | BOX: SPARES KRAFT        | 53552208               | N/A                |
| 2                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | FOAM: PACKAGING (TOP)    | 53581601               | N/A                |
| 3                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | FOAM: PACKAGING (BOT. L) | 53581602               | N/A                |
| 4                       | 1050/<br>2350/<br>2450 | FOAM: PACKAGING (BOT. R) | 53581603               | N/A                |

Page: 234



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

#### **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

### **PREFACE**

This Manual is intended for maintenance personnel and describes the field maintenance methods for High Capacity Second Paper Feeder option of OKIFAX 2350/2450 Series Plain Paper Facsimile Systems.



#### **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

#### 9.1 Outline

#### 9.1.1 Functions

The OKIFAX is mounted on top of this High Capacity Second Paper Feeder. The High Capacity Second Paper Feeder supplies paper automatically through the operation of pulse motor (hopping), which is driven by signals sent from the printer. The main functions are the followings:

#### Paper that can be used:

Paper Type Standard paper: Xerox 4200 (20-lb) Special paper: OHP sheets (for PPC), Label sheets (PPC sheets); use of envelopes or thick paper is not possible. Cut sheet size: A4, A5, B5, Letter, Executive, Legal13, Legal14 Special size: Paper width: 87 to 216mm Paper length: 190 to 355.6mm

Weight 16-lb to 24-lb (60 to 90 g/m 2)

Paper setting quantity: 500 sheets of paper weighing 64 g/m 2

#### 9.1.2 External View and Component Names

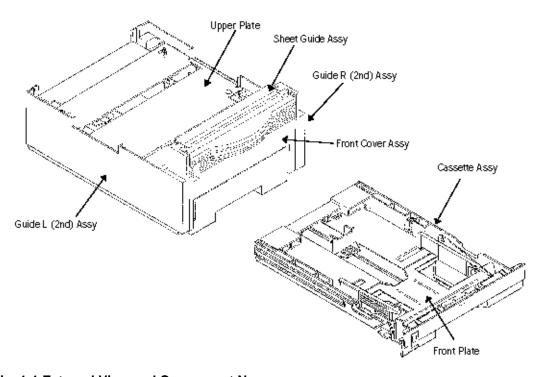


Fig. 1-1 External View and Component Names



#### **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

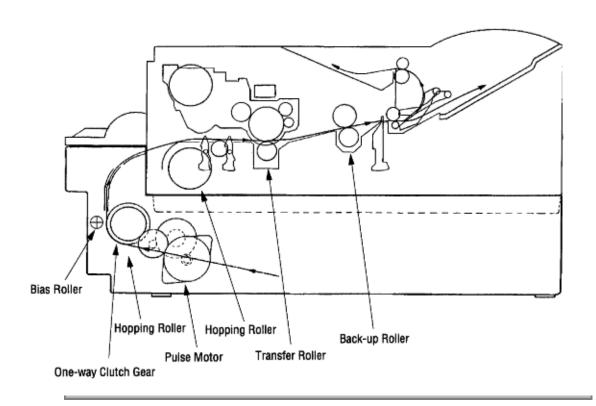
#### 9.2 Mechanism Description

#### 9.2.1 General Mechanism

The High Capacity Second Paper Feeder feeds the paper into the printer by receiving the signal from the OKIFAX unit, which drives the pulse motor inside the High Capacity Second Paper Feeder, and this motion is transmitted to rotate the one-way clutch of the hopping frame assembly. The paper is delivered from the hopper into the printer through the turning of the hopping roller and feed roller. Once delivered into the facsimile, the paper is then controlled and fed through by pulse motor (registra-tion) of the printer.

#### 9.2.2 Hopper Mechanism

The hopper automatically feeds the facsimile with the paper being set, single sheet at a time. When the paper is loaded in the paper cassette, it is then transported by the pulse motor, carrying forward only a single sheet caught by the brake shoe at a time.



Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



#### **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

#### 9.3 PARTS REPLACEMENT

This section covers the procedures for the disassembly, reassembly and installations in the field. This section describes the disassembly procedures, and for reassembly procedures, basically proceed with the disassembly procedures in the reverse order.

#### 9.3.1 Precautions Concerning Parts Replacement Use good anti-static precautions.

**Note:** Parts replacements must be carried out, by first turning the OKIFAX power switch off O and removing the printer from the High Capacity Second Paper Feeder.

- 1. Do not disassemble the High Capacity Paper Feeder if it is operating normally.
- 2. Establish the extent of disassembly suitable for the purpose of the procedure, and do not disassemble any more than necessary.
- 3. Only specified service tools may be used.
- 4. Disassembly must be carried out according to the prescribed procedures. Parts may be damaged if such procedures are not followed.
- 5. Small parts such as screws and collars can easily be lost, therefore these parts should be temporarily fixed in the original location.
- 6. When handling printed circuit boards, do not use any glove which may generate static electricity.
- 7. Do not place the printed circuit boards directly on the equipment or floor.

#### **Service Tools**

Table 3-1 shows the tools required for the replacement of printed circuit boards, assemblies and units in the field.

Table 3-1 Service Tools

| No. | Service Tools |                                  |   | Application       | Remarks |
|-----|---------------|----------------------------------|---|-------------------|---------|
| 1   |               | No. 1-100 Philips<br>screwdriver | 1 | 2 ~ 2.5 mm screws |         |
| 2   |               | No. 2-100 Philips<br>screwdriver | 1 | 3 ~ 5 mm screws   |         |
| 3   |               | No. 3-100 screwdriver            | 1 |                   |         |
| 4   |               | Digital multimeter               | 1 |                   |         |
| 5   |               | Pliers                           | 1 |                   |         |



# **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

### 9.3.2 Parts Layout

This section describes the layout of the main components.

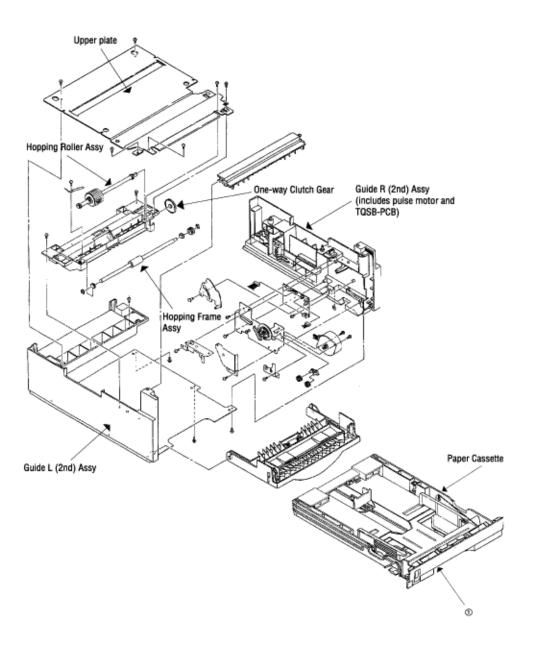


Fig. 3-1

Page: 239



# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

## **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

| 9.3.3 Parts Replacement                   | Methods          |
|---|------------------|
| This section describes the diagram below. | <del></del>      |
| High Capacity Paper Feeder                | TQSB-PCB (3.3.2) |

Page: 240

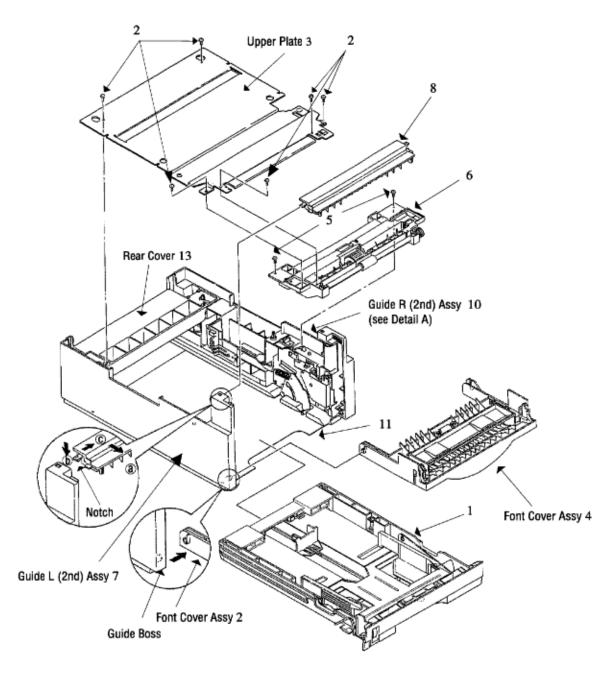


# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

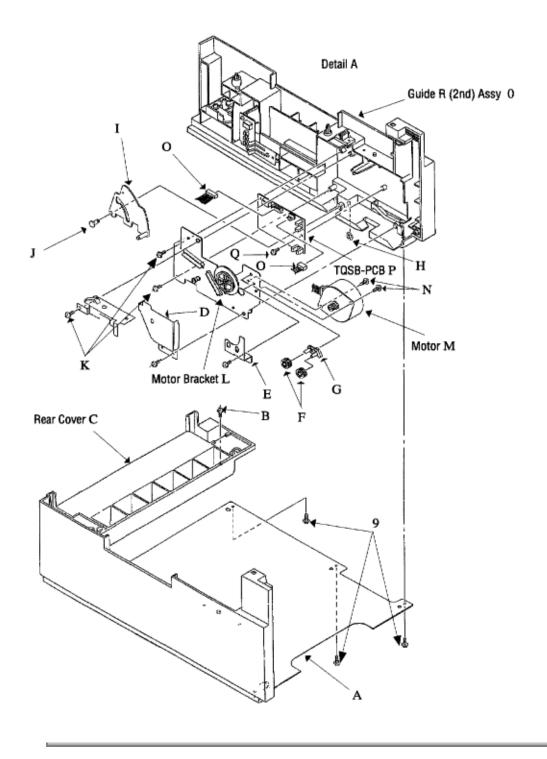
### **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

## 9.3.3.1. Pulse Motor (Hopping)

- 1) Turn the OKIFAX power switch off, pull out the AC cord from the outlet. Remove the OKIFAX from the High Capacity Second Paper Feeder.
- 2) Take the paper cassette assy 1 out of High Capacity Second Paper Feeder.
- 3) Remove six screws 2 and remove the upper plate 3. Remove two screws 5 and remove the hopping frame assy 6.
- 4) Remove the front cover assy 4 off the guide boss on the guide L (2nd) assy 7 by bending the guide L (2nd) assy 7 in the direction of arrow shown in the magnified view below.
- 5) Pull the sheet guide assy 8 in the direction of arrow a and also push in the direction of arrow b to unlock the notch, and bring the sheet guide assy 8 in the direction of arrow c to remove the sheet guide assy 8.



- 6) Remove three screws 9 which are holding the guide R (2nd) assy 0 to the bottom plate A. Remove the screw B which is keeping the rear cover C and guide R (2nd) assy 0. Remove the guide R (2nd) assy 0.
- 7) Remove the protect (M) D, guide bracket E, planet gears F and planet gear bracket G.
- 8) Remove the E-ring H which is keeping the sheet link I on the guide R (2nd) assy 0, and pull out the hinge stand J.
- 9) Remove three remaining screws K which are keeping the motor on the motor bracket L, and remove the connector off the motor M.
- 10) Remove two screws N on the motor M.



Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



#### **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

### 9.3.3.2. TQSB-PCB

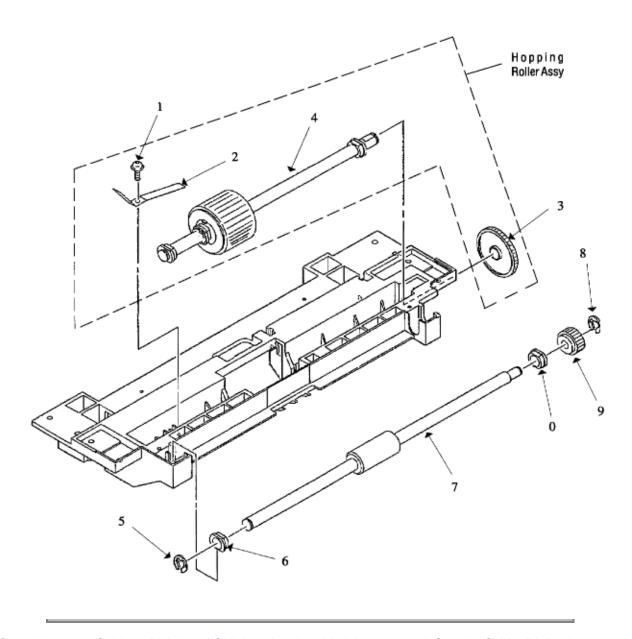
- 1) Remove the pulse motor (see 9.3.3.1 ).
- 2) Remove the connector O from the TQSB-PCB P. 3) Remove the screw Q and remove the TQSB-PCB P.

Note: Refer to Detail A in the previous page.

### 3.3.3. Hopping Roller Assy and One-way Clutch Gear

- 1) Follow up to step (3) of **9.3.3.1** and remove the hopping frame assy.
- 2) Remove the screw 1 and remove the earth plate 2. Remove the gear 3 and remove the hopping roller 4.
- 3) Take out the feed roller 7. Remove the E-ring 5 and ADF bearing 6 on the left side of feed roller 7.
- 4) Remove the E-ring 8 and remove the one-way clutch gear 9 on the right side of the feed roller 0.

**Note :** The ADF bearing 0 also comes off. Be careful not to lose it.



Copyright 1997, Okidata, Division of OKI America, Inc. All rights reserved. See the OKIDATA Business Partner Exchange (BPX) for any updates to this material. (http://bpx.okidata.com)



#### **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

### 9.4 Troubleshooting

#### 9.4.1 Precautions Prior to the Troubleshooting

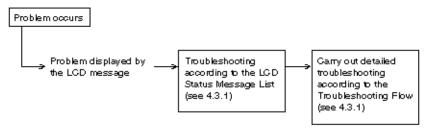
Go through the basic checking items provided in the prior sections of this Handbook. Obtain detailed information concerning the problem from the user. Go through checking in the conditions similar to that in which the problem occurred.

#### 9.4.2 Preparations for the Troubleshooting

Display on the Operator panel - The status of the problem is displayed on the LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) on the Operator panel. Go through the appropriate troubleshooting procedures according to the messages displayed on the LCD.

#### 9.4.3 Troubleshooting Method

When a problem occurs, go through the troubleshooting according to the following procedure.



### 4.3.1 LCD Status Message List

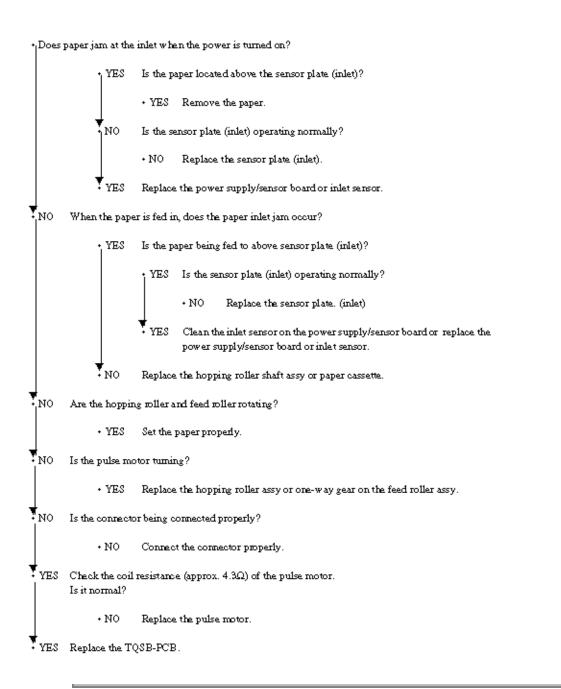
The listing of the statuses and problems displayed in the form of messages on the LCD is provided in Table 4-1.

| Classification         | LCD Status Message              | Description  | Recovery Method   |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|--|---|
| Jam error<br>(feeding) | PAPER MIS FEED<br>REPLACE PAPER | Notifies of occurrence of jam while the paper is being fed from High Capacity Second Paper Feeder. | <ul> <li>Check the paper in the High Capacity Second Paper Feeder. Carry out the recovery printing by opening and closing the cover, and turn the error display off.</li> <li>When the problem occurs frequently, go through the Trouble-shooting.</li> </ul> |

| Jam error<br>(ejection)<br>(see note<br>below) | PAPER JAM<br>REPLACE PAPER | Notifies of occurrence of jam while the paper is being ejected from the printer.             | Check the paper in<br>the printer. Carry out<br>the recovery printing by<br>opening and closing<br>the cover, and turn the<br>error display off.   |
|--|----------------------------|--|--|
| Paper size<br>error                            | PAPER JAM<br>REPLACE PAPER | Notifies of incorrect<br>size paper feeding<br>from High Capacity<br>Second Paper<br>Feeder. | Check the paper in the High Capacity Second Paper Feeder. Also check to see if there was a feeding of multiple sheets. Carry out the recovery printing by opening and closing the cover, and turn the error display off. |

Note: The OKIFAX 2350/2450 must be programmed for the size of paper loaded in both the first, and optional second cassettes. (User function number 10 for first cassette size, and number 11 for optional second cassette size). If paper hopper is of a different size than programmed, a logical jam will occur.

JAM error Paper Inlet Jam

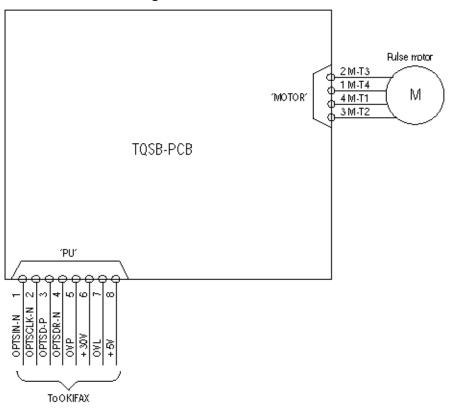




## **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

## 9.5 Connection Diagram

### 9.5.1 Interconnection Diagram

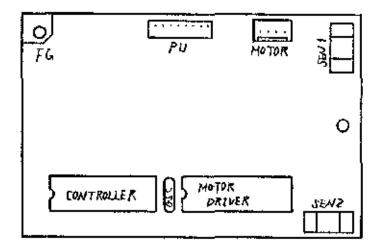




## **Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance**

## 9.5.2 PCB Layout

### **TQSB-PCB**



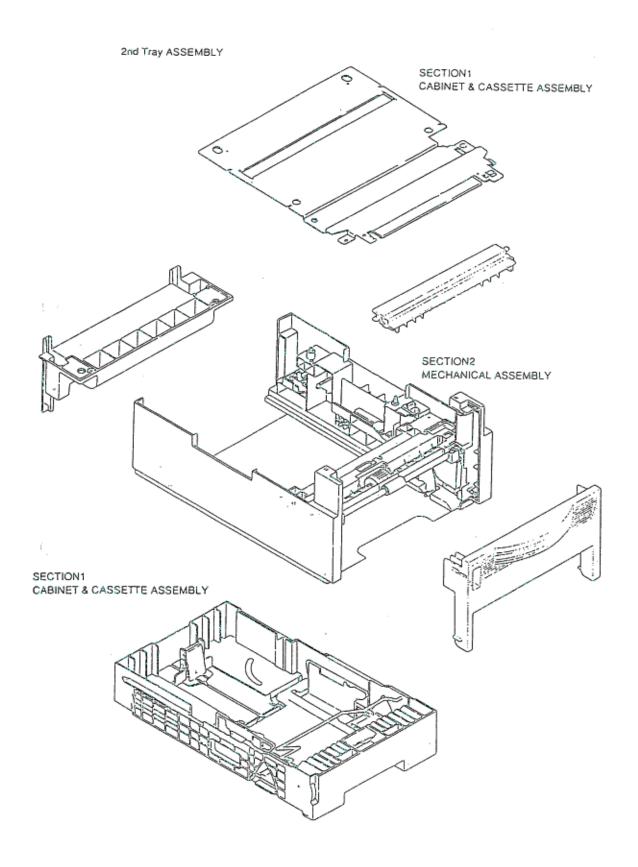
Page: 245

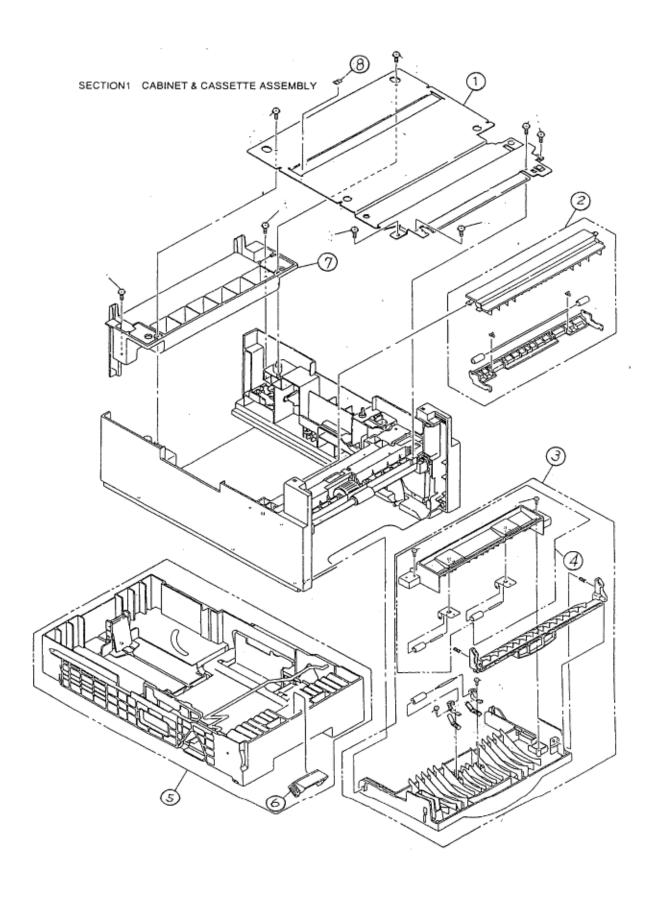


# Service Guide OF1050/2350/2450

**Chapter 9 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder Maintenance** 

9.6 Parts List





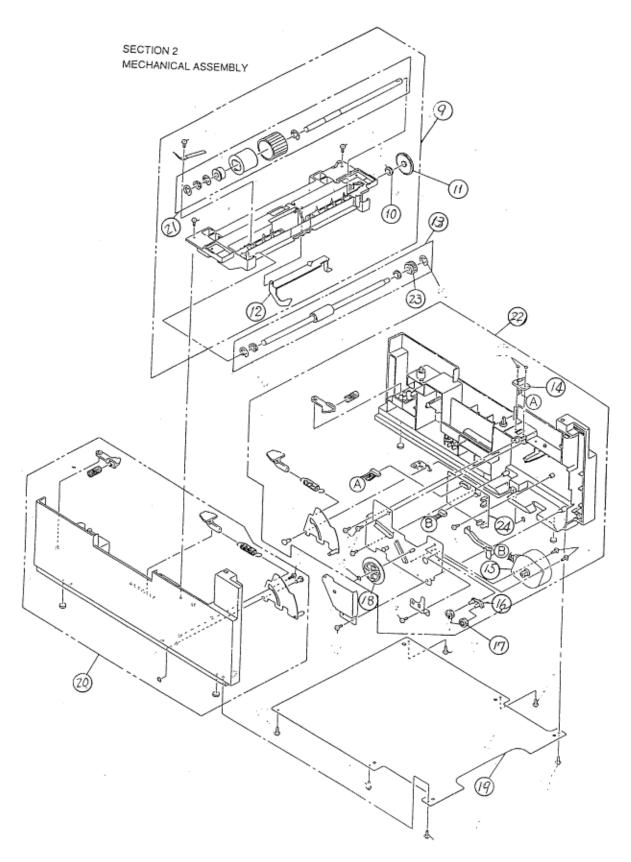


Figure 6-1 High Capacity Second Paper Feeder

**Table 6-1 High Capacity Paper Feeder** 

| No. | Description                   | OKI-J Part No.   | OKIDATA<br>Part No. | Qty |
|-----|-------------------------------|------------------|---------------------|-----|
| 1   | Plate: Upper                  | 1PP4122-1401P001 | 51023301            | 1   |
| 2   | Guide: Sheet Assembly         | 3PA4122-1370G001 | 50222001            | 1   |
| 3   | Cover: Front Assembly         | 1PA4122-1369G001 | 53075301            | 1   |
| 4   | Guide: Inner Assembly         | 3PA4122-1371G001 | 50221501            | 1   |
| 5   | Cassette: Assy 2nd Tray       | 1PA4122-1362G004 | 50107304            | 1   |
| 6   | Frame: Separation (F) Assy    | 4PP4120-1009G001 | 50222101            | 1   |
| 7   | Cover: Rear                   | 1PP4122-1323P001 | 53075201            | 1   |
| 8   | Ground: Stick Finger          | 4PB4122-1441P001 | 51023401            | 1   |
| 9   | Frame: Hopping Assembly       | 1PA4122-1366G001 | 50222401            | 1   |
| 10  | Bearing                       | 4PP3522-3568P001 | 51608901            | 1   |
| 11  | Gear (Z70)                    | 4PP4122-1207P001 | 51239001            | 1   |
| 12  | Sensor: Lever (P)             | 3PP4122-1331P001 | 50411201            | 1   |
| 13  | Roller: Feed Assembly         | 3PA4122-1393G001 | 50222501            | 1   |
| 14  | Cable and Connector           | 3YS4111-3528P001 | 56633901            | 1   |
| 15  | Motor: Pulse                  | 3PB4122-1399P001 | 56512201            | 1   |
| 16  | Bracket                       | 4PP4122-1384G001 | 51712001            | 1   |
| 17  | Gear (Z24)                    | 4PP4122-1383P001 | 51238901            | 2   |
| 18  | Gear (Z87/Z60)                | 4PP4122-1226P001 | 51239101            | 1   |
| 19  | Plate: Bottom                 | 2PP4122-1389P001 | 51023201            | 1   |
| 20  | Guide: 2nd Cassette (L) Assy  | 1PA4122-1365G001 | 50222301            | 1   |
| 21  | Roller: Hopping Assy 2nd Tray | 3PA4122-1367G001 | 50409501            | 1   |
| 22  | Guide: 2nd Cassette (R) Assy  | 1YX4122-1364G002 | 50222201            | 1   |
| 23  | Clutch: One-Way 2nd Tray      | 4PP4122-1382P001 | 51401101            | 1   |
| 24  | PCB: TQSB (2nd Feeder)        | 4YA4046-1651G002 | 55078102            | 1   |